## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Grammar</th>
<th>Vocabulary</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>A My name's Hannah, not Anna</td>
<td>verb be and subject pronouns: I, you, etc.</td>
<td>days of the week, numbers 0–20, greetings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>B All over the world</td>
<td>verb be and the</td>
<td>the world, numbers 21–100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>C Open your books, please</td>
<td>possessive adjectives: my, your, etc.</td>
<td>classroom language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Practical English Episode 1 Arriving in London

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Practical English Episode 2 Coffee to take away

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Practical English Episode 3 In a clothes shop

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Grammar</td>
<td>Vocabulary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>At the National Portrait Gallery</td>
<td>past simple of be: was/were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Chelsea girls</td>
<td>past simple: regular verbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>A night to remember</td>
<td>past simple: irregular verbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>PRACTICAL ENGLISH Episode 4 Getting lost</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>8</th>
<th>Grammar</th>
<th>Vocabulary</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>A murder story</td>
<td>past simple: regular and irregular</td>
<td>irregular verbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>A house with a history</td>
<td>there is/there are, some/any + plural nouns</td>
<td>the house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>A night in a haunted hotel</td>
<td>there was/there were</td>
<td>prepositions: place and movement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>REVISE AND CHECK 7&amp;8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>9</th>
<th>Grammar</th>
<th>Vocabulary</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>What I ate yesterday</td>
<td>countable/uncountable nouns; a/an, some/any</td>
<td>food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>White gold</td>
<td>quantifiers: how much/how many, a lot of, etc.</td>
<td>food containers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Quiz night</td>
<td>comparative adjectives</td>
<td>high numbers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>PRACTICAL ENGLISH Episode 5 At a restaurant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>10</th>
<th>Grammar</th>
<th>Vocabulary</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>The most dangerous road...</td>
<td>superlative adjectives</td>
<td>places and buildings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>CouchSurf round the world!</td>
<td>be going to (plans); future time expressions</td>
<td>holidays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>What's going to happen?</td>
<td>be going to (predictions)</td>
<td>verb phrases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82</td>
<td>REVISE AND CHECK 9&amp;10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>11</th>
<th>Grammar</th>
<th>Vocabulary</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>First impressions</td>
<td>adverbs (manner and modifiers)</td>
<td>common adverbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>What do you want to do?</td>
<td>verbs + to + infinitive</td>
<td>verbs that take the infinitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Men, women, and the internet</td>
<td>articles</td>
<td>the internet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>PRACTICAL ENGLISH Episode 6 Going home</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>12</th>
<th>Grammar</th>
<th>Vocabulary</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Books and films</td>
<td>present perfect</td>
<td>irregular past participles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>I've never been there!</td>
<td>present perfect or past simple?</td>
<td>more irregular past participles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>The English File questionnaire</td>
<td>revision: question formation</td>
<td>revision: word groups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98</td>
<td>REVISE AND CHECK 11&amp;12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 100 | Communication | | |
| 111 | Writing | | |
| 116 | Listening | | |
| 124 | Grammar Bank | | |
| 148 | Vocabulary Bank | | |
| 165 | Irregular verbs | | |
| 166 | Sound Bank | | |
LISTENING & SPEAKING

a) Look at the pictures. Listen and number them 1-4.

b) Listen again and complete the gaps.

1. A: Hi, I'm Mike. What's your name?
   B: Hannah.
   A: Hi, Hannah.
   B: Goodbye.

2. A: What's your phone number?
   B: It's 7894 132 456.
   A: See you on Saturday. Bye.
   B: Goodbye.

3. A: Mum, this is Hannah.
   B: Nice to meet you.
   C: Nice to meet you, Anna.
   B: name's Hannah.
   C: Sorry, Hannah.

4. A: Hi, you're early!
   B: Hello, Mrs. Archer. How are you?
   C: I'm very well, you, Anna. And you?
   B: thanks.
   A: It's Hannah, Mum.

b) Complete the gaps with a word from the list:

Fine  Hi  I'm...  Thanks  Bye

Hello =
My name's... =
Very well =
Thank you =
Goodbye =

d) Listen and repeat some phrases from the dialogue. Copy the rhythm.

e) In groups of three, practise the dialogues with the sound effects. Change roles.

f) Introduce yourself to other students.

Hello, I'm Antonio.
What's your name? Carla. Nice to meet you.
2 GRAMMAR verb be +, subject pronouns

a Complete the sentences with are, is, or am.

I'm Mike. = I __________ Mike.
My name's Hannah. = My name __________ Hannah.
You're early. = You __________ early.
It's 7894 132 456. = It __________ 7894 132 456.

b ➤ p.124 Grammar Bank 1A. Learn more about verb be + and subject pronouns, and practise them.

c 16 Listen and repeat the pronouns and contractions.

d 17 Listen. Say the contraction. I am I'm

e In pairs, try to remember the names in your class.
Say He's / She's __________.

f Stand up and speak to other students.
Hi Carla. How are you? Fine thanks. And you?

3 PRONUNCIATION vowel sounds, word stress

a 18 Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

fish tree cat egg train bike

it this he meet am thanks very well they name I Hi Bye

b ➤ p.166 Sound Bank. Look at the example words and spellings for the sounds in a.

Word stress Multi-syllable words have one stressed syllable.
sorry [ˈsɒr.i] goodbye [ˈɡʊd.bədi] Saturday [ˈsætərˌdeɪ]

4 VOCABULARY days of the week, numbers 0–20

a Look at the picture. Can you remember what Mike and Hannah say?

b ➤ p.148 Vocabulary Bank Days and numbers. Do parts 1 and 2.

c 12 Listen and say the next day or number.
Monday, Tuesday Wednesday

What's your phone number? What day is it today? And tomorrow?

5 LISTENING & SPEAKING

a 13 Listen. Where are they? Write 1–6 in the boxes.

- airport Gate number _______
- sandwich bar _______ euros _______ cents
- hotel Room _______
- museum Closed on _______
- taxi _______ Manchester Road
- school Classes on _______ and _______

b Listen again. Write a number or a day in each space.

c 14 Listen and respond.
Hello. Nice to meet you. Nice to meet you.
1B All over the world

1 VOCABULARY the world
a Can you name three countries in English?

b p.149 Vocabulary Bank The world.
c 17 Listen. Say the nationality.
  Scotland Scottish
d In pairs, do the quiz.

Useful phrases
I think it's in Italy,
I think it's Russian, but I'm not sure.

THE WORLD QUIZ

2 PRONUNCIATION /ə, əʃ, ɪʃ, ʌʃ/ The /ə/ sound
The /ə/ sound is the most common vowel sound in English. The /ə/ sound has many different spellings, e.g. Hello, Saturday, Britain

a 120 Listen and repeat the words and sounds.
  computer American Argentinian Scotland Switzerland

b 121 Listen and repeat the sound pictures and sentences. Practise with a partner.
  1 chess Charles is Czech, not French.
  2 shower She's Polish or Russian. I'm not sure.
  3 jazz We're German and they're Japanese.
c p.166 Sound Bank. Look at the example words and spellings for the sounds in a and b.

1 Where are these capital cities?
a Canberra ________
b Prague ________
c Warsaw ________
d Ankara ________
e Edinburgh ________

2 What country is the money from?
a the dollar ________
b the yuan ________
c the rouble ________
d the pound ________
e the yen ________

3 What country is the food from?
a tapas ________
b goulash ________
c pasta ________
d tacos ________

4 What nationality are the flags?
a ________
b ________
c ________
d ________

5 18 What national anthem is it? Write the nationality.
a ________ c ________
b ________ d ________

6 19 What language is it? Write a-d in the boxes.
  [ ] Turkish [ ] Russian
  [ ] Chinese [ ] Irish (Gaelic)

Languages
The word for a language is usually the same as the nationality adjective, e.g. in Italy the language is Italian.
3 GRAMMAR  verb be and are
a 1.22] Cover the dialogues. Listen to three interviews in London. Which countries are the people from?
b Read the dialogues. Complete with I'm, I'm not, are, aren't, is, or isn't.

1 A Are you English?
B No, ________ English.
A Where ________ you from in Scotland?
B ________ from Glasgow.

2 A Where ________ you from?
B ________ from Australia, from Darwin.
A Where's Darwin? ________ it near Sydney?
B No, it ________. It's in the north.
A ________ it nice?
B Yes, it ________. It's beautiful.

3 A Where ________ you from?
B We're from Columbus, Ohio, in the USA.
A ________ you on holiday?
C No, we ________. We're students.

c Listen and check.
d 1.24) Grammar Bank 1B. Learn more about verb be and are, and practise it.
e 1.24) Listen and respond with a short answer.
Is Sydney the capital of Australia? No, it isn't.
f With a partner, write three questions beginning Is...? or Are...? Ask them to another pair.

4 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING
sentence stress
Sentence stress In sentences we stress the important words.
Where's she from? She's from China.

a 1.25) Listen and repeat. Copy the rhythm.
A Where are you from?
B I'm from ________.
2 A Are you ________?
B No, I'm not. I'm ________.
b Practise the dialogues in 3 with a partner.
c Communication Where are they from?
A p.100 B p.106.
d Ask people in the class Where are you from?

5 VOCABULARY numbers 21-100
a Look at the signs. Can you say the numbers?
c 1.27) Listen and write the numbers.
d Write ten numbers from 21-100. Dictate them to a partner.

6 LISTENING
a 1.28) Listen and repeat the pairs of numbers. What's the difference?
1 a 13 b 30 5 a 17 b 70
2 a 14 b 40 6 a 18 b 80
3 a 15 b 50 7 a 19 b 90
4 a 16 b 60
b 1.29) Which number do you hear? Listen and circle a or b above.
c Play Bingo.

7 1.30) SONG All Over the World 🎵
1 **VOCABULARY**

**classroom language**

- board /bɔːd/
- chair /tʃeə/
- computer /kəmˈpjuːtə/
- desk /desk/
- door /dɔːr/
- picture /ˈpɪktʃər/
- table /ˈteɪbl/
- wall /wɔːl/
- window /ˈwɪndəʊ/

b 1:31 Listen and check.

c ➪ p.150 Vocabulary Bank

**Classroom language.**

d 1:34 Listen and follow the instructions.

2 **PRONUNCIATION**

**/ lou, /ʌ, /au/; the alphabet**

- train /trɛin/  tree /triː/  egg /ɛɡ/  bike /baɪk/  phone /fəʊn/  boot /bʊt/  car /kɑːr/

- A  H  J  I  Y  Q  R

- E  G  P  X  Z

b 1:36 Look at these common abbreviations. Can you say any of them in English? Listen and check.

OK  BBC  MTV  CNN  USB  DVD  BMW  ATM


d 1:38 Listen and circle the letter you hear.

1 EAI  2 GJ  3 KQ  4 CS
5 VPB  6 MN  7 VW  8 UY

e Practise saying the phrases below with abbreviations.

a Personal Computer
the United Kingdom
the European Union
a Disc Jockey

b Very Important Person
the United States of America
a Portable Document Format
the National Basketball Association
3 LISTENING & SPEAKING

A student goes to London to study English. Listen to the interview and complete her form.

| First name | D    |
| Surname    | B    |
| Country    |      |
| City       |      |
| Age        |      |
| Address    | Avenida Princesa Isabel |
| Postcode   |      |
| Email      | dbezerra@mail.com |
| Phone number | 55 |
| Mobile phone |      |

b (1-40) Listen. Complete the receptionist’s questions.
1 What’s your ______ name?
2 ______ your surname?
3 ______ do you spell it?
4 Where are you ______ ?
5 ______ old are you?
6 ______ your address?
7 ______ your postcode?
8 What’s your ______ address?
9 What’s your ______ ?

c Listen again and repeat the questions. Copy the rhythm.

d Ask your partner the questions. Write down their answers.

Correct Spelling: names and addresses
RR = double R  @ = at  . = dot

4 GRAMMAR possessive adjectives: my, your, etc.

a Complete the gaps with I, you, my, or your.
1 Where are ______ from?
   ______ from Rio.
2 What’s ______ name?
   ______ name’s Darly.

b ➤ p.124 Grammar Bank 1C. Learn more about possessive adjectives and practise them.

c (1-42) Listen. Change the sentences.
I’m Richard.  My name’s Richard.

5 SPEAKING
➤ Communication What’s his / her real name? A p.100 B p.106. Find out if some actors’ and singers’ names are their real names or not.

6 WRITING
➤ p.111 Writing Completing a form.
Complete an application for a student visa and write a paragraph about you.
1 VOCABULARY in a hotel

a Match the words and symbols.
- Reception /rɪˈseptʃən/
- the lift /lɪft/ (lift)
- a single room /ˈsɪŋgl ɹʊm/ (single room)
- a double room /ˈdʌbl ɹʊm/ (double room)
- the bar /bɑːr/ (bar)
- the ground floor /ˈɡraʊnd flɔːr/ (ground floor)
  (first, second, third, etc.)

b 143 Listen and check.

2 INTRODUCTION

a 144 Watch or listen to Jenny and Rob. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
1 Rob lives and works in London.
2 He's a writer for a magazine.
3 The name of his magazine is London 2007.
4 Jenny is British.
5 She's an assistant editor.
6 It's her second time in the UK.

b Watch or listen again. Say why the F sentences are false.

3 CHECKING IN

a 145 Watch or listen to Jenny checking into a hotel room. Answer the questions.
1 Complete Jenny’s surname: ZI__LI__SK__.
2 What’s her room number?

b Watch or listen again. Complete the You Hear phrases.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>You Hear</th>
<th>You Say</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Good evening, madam.</td>
<td>Hello, I have a reservation. My name’s Jennifer Zielinski.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For five nights?</td>
<td>Yes, that’s right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can I have your passport, please?</td>
<td>Just a second…Here you are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thank you. Can you sign here, ______? Thank you.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Here’s your ______. It’s room 306, on the third floor. The ______ is over there.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The lift? Oh, the elevator.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes. Enjoy your stay, Ms Zielinski.</td>
<td>Thank you.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

British and American English
- lift = British English  elevator = American English
- z = /zed/ in British English, /zed/ in American English

Greetings
- Good morning = 12.00
- Good afternoon = 12.00 > 18.00
- Good evening = 18.00 >
- Good night = Goodbye (when you go to bed)
- Madam = a polite way to greet a woman
- Sir = a polite way to greet a man

c 146 Watch or listen and repeat the You Say phrases. Copy the rhythm.
4 JENNY TALKS TO ROB

a  1.48) Watch or listen and mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
1 Jenny has a coffee.
2 She is in London on business.
3 The waitress is German.
4 Jenny phones Rob Walker.
5 Jenny is tired.
6 Their meeting is at 10.00.

b Watch or listen again. Say why the F sentences are false.

c  1.49) Read the information in the box. Listen and repeat the Would you like...? phrases and the responses. Practise offering drinks and responding.

Would you like...?  
Would you like a coffee? Yes, please.  
Would you like another tea? No, thanks.

We use Would you like...? to offer somebody something. We respond Yes, please or No, thanks.

Social English phrases
I’m here (on business).
I’m from [New York], What about you?
No problem.
Is that [Jennifer]?

This is [Rob, Rob Walker]. That’s perfect.
It’s time for bed.

d Look at the Social English phrases. Who says them: Jenny, Rob, or the waitress?

h You are in a hotel. How do you ask the receptionist to give you...?
• your key  • your passport
• a map of London  • a pen

i Watch or listen again and check. Do you know what they are in your language?

f Watch or listen again and repeat the phrases.

Can you...?
[ ] check into a hotel and spell your name
[ ] ask somebody to do something/to give you something
[ ] offer somebody a drink, and accept or refuse
2A A writer’s room

1 VOCABULARY things
a Look at a photo of Roald Dahl, the author of many famous children’s books and stories for adults. Do you know any of his books?
b Look at the photo of his room. Tick (✓) or cross (✗) the things you can see in the picture. Do you think the room is tidy?
- a table
- a lamp
- a computer
- a chair
- pencils
- photos
- a window
- a printer
- a phone
- pieces of paper

c ➤ p.151 Vocabulary Bank Things.

2 GRAMMAR a/ an, plurals
a Complete the chart.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a pen</td>
<td>pens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>umbrella</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch</td>
<td>watches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>book</td>
<td>diaries</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b ➤ p.126 Grammar Bank 2A part 1. Learn more about a/ an and plurals, and practise them.

3 PRONUNCIATION final -s and -es
a 1:53 Listen and repeat the words and sounds.
  - snake books lamps tickets
  - zebra photos keys pens
  - /z/ glasses watches purses

b 1:54 Read the rule. Circle the words where -es is pronounced /z/. Listen and check.

Final -es
Final -es after ce, ch, sh, s, ge, and x = /z/, e.g. watches, glasses, purses
1 classes 3 headphones 5 pieces 7 pages
2 files 4 boxes 6 tissues 8 mobiles
4 LISTENING & SPEAKING

a  Communication What's on the table? p.100.

b (1.55) Listen to three people say what things they have on the table or desk where they work. Are their tables tidy?

c Listen again and tick (✓) the things they have.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a computer / a laptop</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a printer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a lamp</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a phone</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>books</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a dictionary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a diary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>photos</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pieces of paper</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pens</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DVDs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tissues</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

d Talk to a partner about the table where you work or study. Say what things you have. Say if the table is tidy or not.

I have a laptop and a printer. I have... it isn't tidy.

e Play What is it? with your partner. A close your eyes. B give things to your partner and ask What is it? What are they?

5 GRAMMAR

this / that / these / those

a (1.56) Look at pictures 1-4 and complete the dialogues. Listen and check. Practise the dialogues.

b Read the dialogues again. What's the difference between...?

1 this and these
2 this and that
3 these and those

c ➤ p.126 Grammar Bank 2A part 2.

Learn more about this / that / these / those and practise them.

6 PRONUNCIATION th

a (1.58) Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

- mother
- this
- that
- these
- the
- they
- thumb
- thanks
- thing
- thirty
- three
- Thursday

b (1.59) Listen and repeat the phrases. Practise saying them.

1 this Thursday
2 thirty-three
3 those things
4 Thanks for that.
5 These are the keys.
6 What are those things there?
7 I'm thirty-three this Thursday.

c Work in pairs. Put four of your things on your table (singular or plural). Ask your partner.

For the things on your table:

What's this in English? It's a watch.

For things in the classroom (point):

What are these in English? They're pictures.
1 VOCABULARY  colours, adjectives part 1

a What colour is the American flag? Write the missing letters.

It's r ______ d, w h ______ t, and b l ______ ______.

b Complete the other colours.

b l ______ c k y ______ l w g r y p ______ n k
r ______ n g b r ______ n w g r ______ n

c Practise with the flags. Ask and answer.

What colour is it?

d What colour is your flag?


2 GRAMMAR  adjectives

a What are they? Label the pictures in the USA quiz using an adjective and a noun from each circle.

Adjectives
nice yellow
American New
fast White
blue high

Nouns
food House
school Airlines
taxi jeans
day York

b p.162) Listen and check. (Circle) the correct rule.
- Adjectives go before | after a noun.
- Adjectives change | don't change before a plural noun.

c p.126 Grammar Bank 2B. Learn more about adjectives and practise them.

d Cover the the pictures. Can you remember the eight phrases?
3 PRONUNCIATION
long and short vowel sounds

Long and short vowels
Vowel sounds in English are long or short. Long sounds have /iː/ in the phonetic symbol, e.g. /aj/. Short sounds have /æ/ in the phonetic symbol, e.g. /æt/.

Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

fish tree cat car

clock horse bull boot

b Match an adjective from circle A with an adjective from circle B with the same vowel sound. Write them in the chart.

A
blue full easy rich
black fast small hot

B
cheap big new good
short wrong bad far

c Listen and check.

d p.166 Sound Bank. Look at the typical spellings for these sounds.

e Adjective race In pairs, in three minutes make phrases with an adjective and a noun with the same vowel sound. Use a/an with singular nouns.

Adjectives
old new grey fast black good big cheap short

Nouns
book boots cars cat day fish jeans photo story

An old photo

4 VOCABULARY adjectives part 2


short Tom Cruise

5 READING

a Read the descriptions and look at the photos.
Who are the two people?

HOLLYWOOD STARS
Who are they?
He's a famous American actor.
He's quite tall and he's very attractive. He has long hair and brown eyes. I think he's about 50.

She's a very beautiful actress. She's quite short and slim, and she has long dark hair. She's a Hollywood star, but she isn't American, she's Spanish.

b Read them again. Guess the meaning of the highlighted words.

6 WRITING & SPEAKING

a Think of a famous person from any country in the world. Use the jobs in the box to help you.

actor / actress musician politician
singer sportsman / sportswoman TV presenter

b Write a short description of the person. Give it to your partner. Can he / she guess who it is?

c Play Guess the famous person.

A think of a famous actor / actress.
B ask ten questions using Is...? Try to guess the actor / actress.

Is it a man or a woman? A woman.

Is she American? Yes, she is.
2C After 300 metres, turn right

1 VOCABULARY feelings
a Match the words and pictures.

☐ hungry ☐ sad ☐ bored
☐ hot ☐ thirsty ☐ happy
☐ angry ☐ cold ☐ stressed
☐ tired ☐ worried

Collocation
Use be + hungry, thirsty, hot, etc., e.g. I'm very hungry.
NOT I have very hungry.

b 1:69 Listen and check. Repeat the phrases.

c Cover the words and look at the pictures.
Make ☐ and ☐ sentences about how you feel and tell your partner.

I'm quite hungry.
I'm very tired.
I'm not hot.

2 LISTENING & READING
a 1:69 The Carter family are on holiday in Ireland. Look at the pictures. Listen and number them 1–5.

A
B
C
D
E
b Listen again and read. Try to guess what the highlighted phrases mean.

1 Satnav After 100 metres turn right.
   Mum Please slow down! This road is very dangerous.
   Dad Don’t worry. You know I’m a good driver.
   Mum Be careful!

2 Suzy Dad, this music is terrible. Can you turn it off?
   Dad OK.
   Tim Dad, I’m very hot. Turn the air conditioning on, please.
   Dad Are you hot, Suzy?
   Suzy No, I’m cold.
   Mum Open your window, Tim.

3 Suzy I’m thirsty. Where’s the water?
   Mum Here you are.
   Tim I’m hungry. Can we stop soon?
   Mum Let’s stop at that service station.
   Dad OK.

4 Tim Give me my iPod.
   Suzy This is my iPod!
   Dad Be quiet!
   Tim Are we there yet? I’m bored.
   Dad It’s not far now. Only 80 kilometres.
   Tim Can you turn the radio on please, Mum?
   Mum OK.
   Dad Oh no!

5 Suzy Where are we?
   Dad We’re here. At the hotel.
   Tim Great!
   Mum Don’t park here. Look at that sign. No parking.
   Dad Don’t worry. It’s OK. Come on. Let’s go.

3 GRAMMAR imperatives, let’s

a Look at the highlighted phrases in 2b. Then complete the chart:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperatives</th>
<th>1 Turn right!</th>
<th>2 __________ right!</th>
<th>Don’t park here!</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Suggestions</td>
<td>__________ stop at that service station.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Come on. Let’s ________</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b ➞ p.126 Grammar Bank 2C. Learn more about imperatives and let’s, and practise them.

c Look at the pictures in 2 and cover the dialogues. Can you remember the imperatives and suggestions with each picture?

d What do the signs mean? Use a verb phrase from the list in a or an imperative.

| be careful | cross the road now | go in here |
| smoke here | listen to music here | take photos |
| turn left  | turn off your mobile | eat or drink here |

1 Turn left

2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

e Cover the list and look at the pictures. Can you remember the phrases?

4 PRONUNCIATION understanding connected speech

Connected speech
When people speak they don’t usually separate all the words. For example, if a word ends with a consonant and the next word begins with a vowel, they join them together, e.g. Turn off the music.

a ➞ 72 Listen and write six sentences.

b Practise saying the sentences.


6 ➞ SONG Please Don’t Go 🎵
1. Hello, _____ your name?
   a. What  b. What are  c. What’s
2. Maria is German. _____ a student.
   a. She’s  b. He’s  c. It’s
3. A. Where _____ from?
   B. He’s from Turkey.
   a. he is  b. is  c. is he
4. They _____ English, they’re Scottish.
   a. isn’t  b. aren’t  c. not are
5. A. Are you from Paris?
   B. Yes, _____.
   a. I am  b. I’m  c. I are
6. She’s Brazilian. _____ name’s Daniela.
   a. His  b. Her  c. Your
7. We’re from the USA. _____ surname is Mackay.
   a. Your  b. Their  c. Our
8. A. What are they?
   B. They’re _____.
   a. watches  b. a watch  c. watches
9. A. What is it?
   B. It’s _____.
   a. a umbrella  b. an umbrella  c. umbrella
10. Look at those _____.
    a. woman’s  b. women’s  c. women’s
11. A. What are _____ in English?
    B. They’re keys.
    a. that  b. this  c. these
12. These are very _____.
    a. difficult exercises  b. exercises difficult  c. difficult exercises
13. _____ careful! That dog’s dangerous.
    a. Are  b. Be you  c. Be
14. Please _____ in the library.
    a. not eat  b. don’t eat  c. no eat
15. I’m hungry. _____ stop at the café.
    a. Let’s  b. We  c. Don’t

**VOCABULARY**

a. Complete with at, from, in, off, or to.
1. I’m _____ Japan.
2. Nice _____ meet you.
3. What’s _____ English?
4. Look _____ the board.
5. Please turn _____ your mobile phone.

b. Complete the phrases with these verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Answer</th>
<th>Stand</th>
<th>Open</th>
<th>Read</th>
<th>Work</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>_____</td>
<td>_____</td>
<td>_____</td>
<td>_____</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>_____</td>
<td>_____</td>
<td>_____</td>
<td>_____</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>_____</td>
<td>_____</td>
<td>_____</td>
<td>_____</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>_____</td>
<td>_____</td>
<td>_____</td>
<td>_____</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>_____</td>
<td>_____</td>
<td>_____</td>
<td>_____</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c. Circle the word that is different.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>one</th>
<th>three</th>
<th>book</th>
<th>five</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eight</td>
<td>two</td>
<td>seven</td>
<td>file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>Chinese</td>
<td>Hungary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Polish</td>
<td>Italian</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Africa</td>
<td>Asia</td>
<td>Ireland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>sixteen</td>
<td>forty</td>
<td>ninety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Wednesday</td>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>Friday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>glasses</td>
<td>purse</td>
<td>headphones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>door</td>
<td>window</td>
<td>wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>wallet</td>
<td>newspaper</td>
<td>book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>happy</td>
<td>tired</td>
<td>angry</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

d. Write the opposite adjective.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>tall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expensive</td>
<td>empty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dirty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRONUNCIATION**

a. Circle the word with a different sound.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>C</th>
<th>D</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Hi</td>
<td>day</td>
<td>my</td>
<td>nice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>/æ/</td>
<td>watches</td>
<td>boxes</td>
<td>files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>German</td>
<td>good</td>
<td>page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>/ə/</td>
<td>dangerous</td>
<td>stamps</td>
<td>bad</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. Underline the stressed syllable.

1. address  2. Italy  3. expensive  4. newspaper  5. thirteen
CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

a Read the article once. Do you know any more words which are American English, not British English?

British & American English –
the same, but different

British and American people speak the same language – English, but with some small differences.

VOCABULARY
Some words are different in American English, for example Americans say zip code, not postcode, vacation, not holiday, and cell phone, not mobile phone. Some words have different meanings, for example in British English a purse is a thing where women have their money and credit cards. In American English a purse is a woman’s bag.

SPELLING
Colour, favour, and other words that end in -our in British English end with -or in American English, e.g. color, favor. Centre, theatre, and other words that end in -tre in British English end with -ter in American English, e.g. center, theater.

GRAMMAR
American grammar is very similar to British grammar, but with some small differences, especially prepositions. For example, Americans say See you Friday, but British people say See you on Friday.

PRONUNCIATION
The most important difference between American and British English is pronunciation. American accents and British accents are quite different, and when an American starts speaking British people know he or she is American, and vice versa.

b Look at the highlighted words in the text and guess their meaning.

c Read the article again. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
1 American English and British English are very different.
2 Holiday and postcode are the same in British and American English.
3 Purse has different meanings in American and British English.
4 Kilometer is British spelling.
5 British and American grammar are not very different.
6 It's difficult to know from their accent if a person is English or American.

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

In the street Watch or listen to five people and answer the questions.

1 Her name is ________.
   a Cecilia b Ceci c Cecile
2 Andy's from Newcastle in the ________ of England.
   a North East b North West c South East
3 David is ________.
   a Italian b French c Spanish
4 Her name is ________.
   a Arya b Aria c Arja
5 Karin is ________.
   a Swiss b Brazilian c Hungarian

CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

Do the tasks with a partner. Tick (✓) the box if you can do them.

Can you...?

1 count from 0–20
2 count from 20–100 (20, 30, etc.)
3 say the days of the week
4 give three instructions: two ☑️ and one ☐
5 introduce yourself and another person
6 answer the questions below
   • What's your first name/surname?
   • How do you spell it?
   • Where are you from?

Short films Hollywood, Los Angeles Watch and enjoy a film on iTutor.
3A Things I love about Britain

1 Vocabulary verb phrases
   a. Complete the phrases with a verb from the list.
      
      go read work have listen
      1 ______ a newspaper  4 ______ to the cinema
      2 ______ to the radio  5 ______ in an office
      3 ______ children


   c. 2.3) Listen. Say the phrase.  TV watch TV

2 Grammar present simple and
   a. Look at four things people say about Britain and the British. Do you think they are true or not true? Then read the text and check your answers.

   THE BRITISH — IS IT TRUE?

   British people drink tea at 5.00. It rains a lot. British people like animals. The food in Britain isn’t very good.

   Four foreigners who live in Britain talk about the things people say about the British...

   British people drink tea at 5.00. Kati from Hungary
   It’s true that British people drink a lot of tea (and coffee) but they don’t drink tea at a special time. I work for a British company here and my boss drinks tea all the time.

   It rains a lot. Nicolai from Russia
   It rains a lot, but it doesn’t rain every day. Be careful because the weather changes quickly. I always take an umbrella when I go out.

   British people like animals. Norma from Mexico
   I have a lot of friends here and they all have a dog or a cat. One family that I know has two dogs and five cats. British people love animals!

   The food in Britain isn’t very good. Hasan from Turkey
   The restaurants are quite expensive but they are great, and the food is good in a lot of pubs, too. I share a flat with a Scottish boy, and he cooks every night. He watches all the cooking programmes on TV and he makes great curries!

   Answer the questions with a partner.
   1. Look at the highlighted verbs. Why do some verbs end in -s?
   2. Write the he / she / it form of these verbs.
      change ______ have ______
      cook ______ go ______
      make ______ watch ______

   3. Find two negative verbs. How are they different from positive verbs? For he / she / it b) for all other persons?

   c. ➤ p.128 Grammar Bank 3A. Learn more about present simple and and practise it.

3 Pronunciation third person -s
   a. How do you pronounce these plural nouns?
      books keys watches

   b. 2.5) Listen and repeat the third person verb forms.
      /s/ She speaks Spanish.
      He drinks coffee.
      /z/ It rains a lot.
      He has a cat.
      /az/ He goes to the cinema on Friday night.
      /s/ He watches TV.
      The film finishes in a minute.
      The weather changes a lot.

   c. 2.6) Listen. Change the sentence.
      I live in a flat. She ______ she lives in a flat.

   d. Tell your partner six true things about you: three -s and three -e. Choose verb phrases from p.153 Vocabulary Bank Verb phrases.
      I play the guitar. I don’t wear glasses.

   e. Change partners. Tell your new partner the six things about your old partner.
      Eva plays the guitar. She doesn’t wear glasses.
Starbucks, summer, and other things I love about Britain

M ark Vanhovenacker, an American journalist who lives in London, says the UK's not just OK – it's paradise. These are some of his reasons...

Walking
Britain isn't a good place for cyclists. But for pedestrians it is wonderful. When you walk on a zebra crossing, all the drivers stop.

Banks
British banks are great – you do everything online, and you don't pay when you take money out of an ATM. And if you want to change banks, the banks do all the work, not you.

Drivers
The British are very polite when they drive. They don't hoot, and they are patient with other drivers. They always say thank you when you let them pass.

Boots the Chemist
Chemists in the UK are wonderful, friendly shops and completely different from US pharmacies. Boots sells everything you want, not just medicine, and the shop assistants give you good advice.

No ID Cards
Britain is one of the only places in the world where people don't have ID cards. In the US you need ID when you buy a drink, go to a club, use a credit card, or take an intercity train.

Summers
I love British summers! A good summer day in Britain is dry and warm, but not very hot.

Starbucks
Starbucks isn't British, of course, but I prefer the Starbucks in Britain. They are nice, friendly places where people read the newspaper and drink good coffee. And the waiters don't write your name on the cups – I feel stupid in America when the waiter calls 'Mark, your tall cappuccino with extra chocolate!'

4 READING & SPEAKING

a Look at the photos. In which one can you see...?
- a cash machine (ATM in American English)
- a cup of coffee
- a zebra crossing
- a driver

b (27) Read and listen to the article. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false). Say why the F ones are false.
1 Britain is a good country for cyclists and pedestrians.
2 It's expensive to use ATMs in Britain.
3 British drivers are nice to other drivers.
4 Boots the Chemist only has medicine.
5 In Britain people don't have ID cards.
6 Summers in Britain are very hot.
7 In Starbucks in Britain waiters don't use your first name.

c Underline these verbs in the text. What do they mean? Compare your ideas with a partner.
walk pay drive sell give need buy use prefer feel call

d Look at each paragraph again. Say if it's the same or different in your country or city.

Useful words: Why? and because
Use because to answer the question Why?
Why isn't Naples a good place for cyclists?
Because people drive very fast!
3B Work and play

1 VOCABULARY jobs

a Order the letters to make words for jobs.
1 ACTEHRE
2 ROCAT
3 TRIEWAG
4 AXI RREDIV
5 PIREONICEST

b ➞ p.154 Vocabulary Bank Jobs.

c What do you do? Ask five other students in the class.

2 LISTENING

a (2, 10, 11) Listen to a game show called His job, her job. A team of three people ask Wayne questions about his job and his wife Tanya's job. Write W next to the questions they ask Wayne about his job, and T next to the questions they ask about Tanya's job.

b Listen again. What are Wayne's answers? Write ✓ (yes), ✗ (no), or D (it depends) after each question.

c Look at the answers. What do you think his job is? What do you think her job is?

d (2, 12) Listen to the end of the programme. What do Wayne and his wife do?

3 GRAMMAR present simple

a (2, 13) Complete the questions. Listen and check.

Why are questions 3 and 4 different?
1 ______ you work with other people?
   Yes, I ______.
2 ______ you work in an office?
   No, I ______.
3 ______ she work with computers?
   No, she ______.
4 ______ she work at the weekend?
   Yes, she ______.

b ➞ p.128 Grammar Bank 3B. Learn more about present simple and practise it.

c In groups of four, play His job, her job. Choose jobs from p.154 Vocabulary Bank Jobs. Ask questions to guess the jobs.
4 PRONUNCIATION /ɜː/  

a 2 | 15 | Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

bird  nurse  thirty  her  work  journalist

b 2 | 16 | Listen. Which word doesn't have the /ɜː/ sound?
1 thirsty  dirty  thirteen  tired
2 earn  here  prefer  service
3 Thursday  sure  turn  Turkey
4 worry  word  worker  world

c Practise saying the sentences.
I prefer Turkish coffee.
Journalists work all over the world.
Shirley is thirty on Thursday.

5 SPEAKING  

a Complete the phrases with a verb from the list.

do (x3) eat  go  listen  read  use  walk  watch

In the week
walk to work / school
a computer at work / school
in English
in a café or restaurant
housework

At the weekend
TV in the morning
to music
sport or exercise
homework
to the cinema

b Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions, then change roles.

A Ask B the questions.
B Answer the questions. Give more information if you can.

A Do you walk to school?  B No, I don't. I go by bus.

c Change pairs. Ask your new partner about his / her old partner.

C Does Akito walk to school?  A No, he doesn't. He goes by bus.

6 READING  

a Read the article. Match each text to a photo. What do the three people do?

UNIFORMS - FOR OR AGAINST?

Three people say what they think...

1. Our uniform is OK. I like the colours, grey and red. The only things I don't like are the tie, because it's difficult to put on, and the skirt, because I prefer trousers. I think uniforms are a good idea. Everybody looks the same, and it's easy to get dressed in the morning – I don't need to think about what to wear.

2. Our uniform is dark trousers and a white nylon top, a bit like a nurse's uniform. We can't wear anything over the uniform, so it's quite cold in the winter, and it gets dirty very easily because it's white. I'm not against uniforms, but my uniform just isn't practical!

3. Our uniform is very simple – a dark blue jacket and trousers and a white shirt and tie. I like it, it's nice and comfortable, so I'm happy to wear it. And I think it's important that people can see where we are when they need help.

b With a partner, say what the highlighted words mean. Check with your teacher or a dictionary.

c Read the article again. Who...?
1 thinks uniforms are a good idea, but doesn't like his / her uniform?
2 likes his / her uniform, but doesn't say anything about uniforms in general?
3 thinks uniforms are a good idea and quite likes his / her uniform?

d Do you wear a uniform at work / school? Do you like it? Why (not)? Do you think uniforms are a good idea?
3C Love online

1 LISTENING

a. Kevin and Samantha want to meet a partner on the internet. Read their profiles and look at their photos. Then cover them and say what you can remember. Do you think they are a good match?

Kevin is 28. He lives in South London...

Kevin
Age: 28
Lives in: South London
Likes: films, music
Doesn't like: football

Samantha
Age: 26
Lives in: South London
Likes: the cinema, good food
Doesn't like: sport

b. (2.17) Kevin and Samantha meet in a restaurant for lunch. Cover the conversation and listen. What does Kevin say about...

1. where he lives 2. his job 3. films he likes

c. Listen again. Complete the missing verbs.

S: Hi. Are you Kevin?
K: Yes. Are you Samantha?
S: Yes, I am, but call me Sam. Nice to ___ you. Sorry I'm late.
K: No problem. You look different from your photo.
S: Let's ___ a drink. A beer? Wine?
K: No, thanks. Water for me. I don't ___ alcohol at lunchtime.

K: I ___ this place.
S: Me too. Where do you ___ in South London?
K: In Bromley. Near the market. I ___ with my mother.
S: Really? What do you ___?
K: I'm a teacher. I teach chemistry.
S: Chemistry? ___ interesting.
K: Yes, it's a very interesting job. ___ about you?
S: I'm a journalist. You ___ the cinema, Kevin. What kind of films do you ___?
S: Oh.
K: Do you ___ Star Wars?
2 **GRAMMAR** word order in questions

a. Cover the conversation. Put the words in order to make the questions.

1. **want you do drink a**

2. **in South live London you do where**

3. **films like kind you of what do**

b. ➤ p.128 Grammar Bank 3C. Learn more about word order in questions and practise it.

3 **VOCABULARY & PRONUNCIATION**

**question words; sentence stress**

a. (2.21) Listen and repeat the question words and phrases. How is Wh- pronounced in Who? How is it pronounced in the other question words?

- How?
- How many?
- What?
- What kind?
- Where?
- Where?
- Which?
- Who?
- Why?

b. Complete the questions with a question word or phrase from the list in a.

1. **What** phone do you have?
   I have an iPhone.

2. **How old** are you?
   22.

3. **How many** brothers and sisters do you have?
   I have two sisters.

4. **What** do you prefer, Saturdays or Sundays?
   Saturdays.

5. **What** do you have English classes?
   On Mondays and Wednesdays.

6. **What** of films do you like?
   I like old British films.

7. **How** do you live?
   In the city centre.

8. **What** is your favourite actor?
   Colin Firth.

9. **How** do you like him?
   Because he's very good-looking!

c. (2.22) Listen and check.

d. Listen again and repeat the questions. Copy the rhythm.

**What phone do you have?**

e. Work in pairs. A ask B the questions. B give your own answers. Then change roles.

4 **SPEAKING**

a. Imagine you meet a new friend online, and you go out for coffee together. Look at the prompts and write eight questions.

- **Where do you work?**
- **Who is your favourite singer?**

b. Work in pairs with a student you don’t know very well.
   A Ask B your first question.
   B Answer the question. Give more information if you can.
   A React to B’s answer.
   B Ask A your first question.

- **A What kind of music do you like?**
   B I like classical music, especially Mozart.

- **A Really? Me too.**

5 **WRITING**

➤ p.111 Writing A personal profile. Write a profile of yourself.

6 (2.23) **SONG** Somethin’ Stupid 🎵
1 TELLING THE TIME
a Look at the clock. What time is it?


2 ROB AND JENNY MEET
a Watch or listen to what happens when Rob and Jenny meet. What do they decide to do?

b Watch or listen again. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false). Say why the F sentences are false.
1 Jenny’s full name is Jennifer.
2 Rob is early.
3 Jenny likes the hotel.
4 She doesn’t like the hotel coffee.
5 She has a meeting with Daniel at 9.15.
6 The office isn’t very far from the hotel.

3 BUYING A COFFEE
a Look at the coffee shop menu. Do you know what all the things are?
b (2:28) Watch or listen to Rob and Jenny buying coffee. Answer the questions.
1. What kind of coffee do Rob and Jenny have?
2. What do they have to eat?
3. How much is it?

c Watch or listen again. Complete the **You Hear** phrases.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>You Hear</th>
<th>You Say</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Can I __________ you?</td>
<td>What would you like, Jenny? An espresso, please.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>__________ or double?</td>
<td>Double. Can I have a latte, please?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>__________ or large?</td>
<td>Large.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To have __________ or take away?</td>
<td>To take away.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anything else?</td>
<td>No, thanks. A brownie for me, please... and a croissant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OK.</td>
<td>How much is that?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That's £12.45, please.</td>
<td>Sorry, how much?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>£12.45. Thank you. And your __________</td>
<td>Thanks.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Cultural note
barista = a person who works in a coffee shop

---

d (2:27) Watch or listen and repeat the **You Say** phrases. Copy the rhythm.

e In threes, practise the dialogue.

f (★★☆) Roleplay the dialogue in groups of three. Then swap roles.
A (book open) You are the barista.
B (book closed) You invite C (book closed) to have a drink.
A begins: Can I help you?
B asks C: What would you like?

---

4 **FIRST DAY IN THE OFFICE**

a (2:28) Watch or listen and answer the questions.
1. What's Karen's job?
2. Where in Europe does Jenny have family?
3. Where does she live in New York?
4. Does Karen have family in New York?
5. What does Daniel offer Jenny to drink?
6. What time is his next meeting?

---

b Look at the **Social English phrases**. Who says them: Rob, Karen, or Daniel?

**Social English phrases**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Here we are.</th>
<th>Talk to you later.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Is this your first time in [the UK]?</td>
<td>Would you like something to drink?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

c (2:29) Watch or listen and check. Do you know what they are in your language?

d *Watch or listen again and repeat the phrases.*

- ☐ Can you...?
  - tell the time
  - order food and drink in a café
  - meet and introduce people
1 GRAMMAR Whose...?, possessive ’s

a How interested are people in your country in the private lives of celebrities? What kind of celebrities? Number the people 1–3 (3 = very interested, 2 = quite interested, 1 = not very interested).

- actors
- politicians
- royalty
- TV stars / presenters
- musicians
- sports players
- others (say what)

b Look at the celebrities in the photos. In pairs, answer the questions for each celebrity.

1 What does he / she do? Where is he / she from?
2 Do you know anything about his / her family or private life?
3 Are you interested in these people? Why (not)?

c With a partner, guess who the other person in each photo is. Choose a or b in sentences 1–5.

d 2b30 Listen and check. What does ’s mean in sentences 1–5?

e 2b30 Grammar Bank 4A. Learn more about Whose...? and possessive ’s and practise them.

f Look at some things from the photos. Whose are they?

Whose is the wristband? It’s George Clooney’s.

wristband /ristband/
bow tie /boʊ taɪ/
T-shirt /ˈtɪʃt/ sunglasses

2 VOCABULARY family

a 2b30 Vocabulary Bank The family.

b In pairs, answer the questions.

Who’s...?

1 your mother’s mother
2 your father’s brother
3 your brother’s / sister’s daughter
4 your aunt’s children
5 your husband’s / wife’s brother
6 your niece’s brother
3 PRONUNCIATION /ə/, the letter ə

a (2:33) Listen and repeat the words and sound.

up mother brother son husband uncle cousin

b ➤ p.166 Sound Bank. Look at the different spellings for this sound.

c How is the letter ə pronounced in these words? Put them in the right column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>come</th>
<th>do</th>
<th>don't</th>
<th>doctor</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>home</th>
<th>job</th>
<th>London</th>
<th>model</th>
<th>money</th>
<th>no one</th>
<th>Scotland</th>
<th>strong</th>
<th>who</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>up</td>
<td>phone</td>
<td>clock</td>
<td>boot</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

d (2:34) Listen and check. Practise saying the words.

e Practise the dialogues with a partner.

A Who's that?
B My mother.
A She's very young!
B No, she's sixty-one. She's a doctor.

A Who are they?
B That's my brother and his son.
A Do they live in Scotland?
B No, they don't. They live in London.

4 LISTENING & SPEAKING

a (2:35) Listen to Isabel showing a friend photos on her phone. Who are the people in the photos in relation to Isabel?

b Listen again. Write down more information about the people in the photos, e.g. their names, ages, jobs, etc.

c Work with a partner.

A Show B some photos of family or friends on your phone or write their names on a piece of paper.
B Ask three questions about each person.

Who's that? She's my sister Yolanda.

How old is she?
1 VOCABULARY
everyday activities

a) Listen to the sounds and number the phrases 1–6.
   1 get dressed
   2 get up
   3 have breakfast
   4 have a shower
   5 go to work/school
   6 have a coffee

b) What order do you do these things in the morning? Tell your partner.
   First I get up, then I...

c) p.156 Vocabulary Bank Everyday activities.

2 PRONUNCIATION
linking and sentence stress

a) Listen and write five sentences.
   1
   2
   3
   4
   5

b) Listen and repeat the sentences. Copy the rhythm.
   I get up at seven.
   I have a shower.
   I go to work.
   I have a sandwich for lunch.
   I get home at six.
   I make the dinner.
   I go to bed at ten.
   What a life!

3 READING & LISTENING

a) Read the article. How do you think Nico feels at the end of a
   typical day? Why? Choose from the adjectives in the list.
   bored happy stressed sad tired worried relaxed

b) Read the article again. Guess the meaning of the highlighted
   words and phrases. Then underline words and phrases connected
   with restaurants, e.g. chef.

   A Ask B questions.
   B Find the answers in the text. Then change roles.
   What time does Nico get up?  He gets up at...
Listen to Amelia, Nico’s 16-year-old stepdaughter, talking about her day. Complete the gaps with a word, a number, or a time.

**Morning**
6:30 | She gets up.
     | She starts school.
     | She has _______ or _______ lessons.

**Afternoon**
She has lunch. She only has _______ minutes for lunch.
She has _______ or _______ lessons.
She finishes school.
On Mondays and _______ she has extra classes to prepare for the university entrance exam.
On Tuesdays and _______ she has _______ practice.

**Evening**
She does _______ and studies until dinner.
After dinner she studies until _______.
She goes to bed.

Look back at the text and the information in d. Whose day do you think is more stressful, Nico’s or Amelia’s? Why?

---

4 **GRAMMAR** prepositions of time (at, in, on) and place (at, in, to)

a. Look at some sentences from Amelia’s day. Complete them with in, on, at, or to.
   1. I get up ______ half past six.
   2. ______ the morning we usually have five lessons, sometimes six.
   3. We have lunch ______ school in the cafeteria.
   4. ______ Mondays and Wednesdays I go ______ extra classes.

b. (2 41) Listen and check.

c. (p.130 Grammar Bank 48) Learn more about prepositions and practise them.

d. (2 44) Listen and say the time phrases with the right preposition.

5 **SPEAKING & WRITING**

a. Work in pairs. Interview your partner about a typical weekday with the questions.
   - What time / get up?
   - / have breakfast in the morning? What / have?
   - How / go to work or school?
   - What time / start work or school?
   - / have a long lunch break? How long?
   - What time / finish work or school?
   - What / do after work or school?
   - / relax in the evening? What / do?
   - When / do English homework?
   - What time / go to bed?
   - How / feel at the end of the day?

   When you can’t be exact
   What time do you get up? At ______ 7.15. What do you have for breakfast? It ______ depends. If I have time, I have toast or cereal.

b. Who do you think has a more stressful day, you or your partner? Why?

c. (p.112 Writing) A magazine article. Write about your favourite day.

---

1600 After lunch I go back to the kitchen and plan the food for the evening menu.
1730 I go home to be with the family for a couple of hours. The children do their homework and I make their dinner.
1930 I go back to the restaurant, which is full again, and I check everything is OK.
2200 I go home and have a shower. Then I collapse on the sofa with a sandwich and a glass of wine.
2300 I go to bed, ready to start again the next day.
4C Short life, long life?

1 VOCABULARY adverbs and expressions of frequency
a (2.45) Complete the gaps with a ‘time’ word. Listen and check.
1 sixty seconds = a minute
2 thirty minutes = half an ______
3 sixty minutes = an ______
4 twenty-four hours = a ______
5 seven days = a ______
6 four weeks = a ______
7 twelve months = a ______
b ➤ p.157 Vocabulary Bank Time. Do parts 2 and 3.

2 GRAMMAR position of adverbs and expressions of frequency
a Read the text about British teenagers. Is it the same in your country?

Today's teenagers may not live as long as their parents

b Look at the position of the highlighted words and expressions. Circle the correct rule.
1 Adverbs of frequency (e.g. usually) go...
   before | after a main verb.
   before | after the verb be.
2 Expressions of frequency (e.g. every week) go...
   at the beginning | at the end of a phrase or sentence.
c ➤ p.130 Grammar Bank 4C. Learn more about adverbs and expressions of frequency and practise them.
d Make true sentences about you with the verb phrases below and an adverb or expression of frequency. Compare with a partner.

be late for work / school

watch the news on TV
go to the hairdresser
be tired in the morning
do homework

check your email
go to the cinema
chat online

I'm often late for work.
I check my emails five times a day.

3 PRONUNCIATION the letter h
a (2.50) Listen and repeat the words and sound.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>house</th>
<th>how</th>
<th>hardly</th>
<th>healthy</th>
<th>high</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>hungry</td>
<td>happy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b (2.51) Listen. Circle the word where h is not pronounced.

Harry's a hairdresser. He hardly ever has breakfast. He only has half an hour for lunch. He often has a hamburger for dinner. Harry isn't very healthy.
c Practise saying the sentences.
d ➤ p.166 Sound Bank. Look at the typical spellings for this sound.
4 READING & SPEAKING

a Work in pairs. Tick (✓) five things which you think help people to live to be a hundred. Then read the article to check.

- They have a big family.
- They aren't in a hurry.
- They sleep eight hours.
- They have pets.
- They hardly ever eat meat.
- They drink a little alcohol.
- They often go to the doctor.
- They work outside.
- They often see friends.

b Read the article again. In which places are these things important?
1 a special kind of water
2 a special kind of food
3 the weather
4 a special kind of drink

Underline new words or phrases in the texts and compare with a partner. Try to guess their meaning. Choose two words to learn from each text.

d Look at the five things in a that are in the texts. Are they true for people in your country? Do you think they have a healthy lifestyle?

e ➤ Communication Short life, long life? p.101 Interview your partner with the questionnaire, then change roles.

5 (2.52) SONG Who Wants to Live Forever 🎶

The secrets of a long life

In three areas of the world a very high number of people live to be 100. Scientists want to know why. What do the three places have in common?

Ecuador

Vilcabamba, a small village in the Andes, is often called ‘the Valley of Long Life’. What’s its secret? Firstly, Vilcabamba is not very hot or very cold – the temperature is usually between 18 and 27 degrees, and the air is very clean. Secondly, people work hard in the fields, and do a lot of exercise. Thirdly, their diet is very healthy – they eat a lot of fruit and vegetables, and they hardly ever eat meat or fish. The water they drink, from the river in Vilcabamba, is very rich in minerals. They also have a good social life. In Vilcabamba people say, ‘The left leg and the right leg help you to be healthy, because they take you to your friends’ homes.’

Italy

In Ogliastro, a mountain region of Sardinia, one out of every 200 people lives to be 100, and they are normally very healthy, too. Most of the people in the villages work outside in their fields, and with their animals. They have a healthy diet, with a lot of vegetables and not much meat or fish. They hardly ever take any medicine, but they usually drink a little grappa before they go to bed. ‘Life is hard,’ says Fortunato, who is a shepherd, ‘but I am never stressed. I never read the newspaper – because I can’t read very well.’

Japan

People in Okinawa in Japan do not have big meals. They usually just have vegetables and fish, and often eat soya. Okinawans are very active, and they often work until they are 80 or more. But they also relax every day – they see friends and they meditate. Usui, from Okinawa, is 107. In the evening she often dances with her daughter and has a glass of sake. ‘I want to have a boyfriend,’ she says. When journalists ask people from Okinawa 'What is your secret?' they answer, 'We are happy, we are always positive, and we are never in a hurry.'

grappa an Italian alcoholic drink
sake a Japanese alcoholic drink
soya a kind of bean typical in Asia
3&4 Revise and Check

GRAMMAR

Circle a, b, or c.
1 I _______ live near here.
   a not b don't c doesn't
2 My sister _______ three children.
   a has b have c have
3 _______ English?
   a Are they speak b Speak they c Do they speak
4 _______ your sister work?
   a Does b Is c Do
5 A Do you work here?
   B Yes, I _______.
   a work b do c am
6 A What _______?
   B He's an engineer.
   a he does b does he c does he do
7 What languages _______?
   a speak you b do you speak c you speak
8 Bill is _______.
   a Carla's husband b husband's Carla c the Carla's husband
9 This is my _______ house.
   a parent's b parents' c parent
10 _______ is this book?
   a Who's b Who c Whose
11 We usually have lunch _______ two o'clock.
   a in b on c at
12 What time do you go _______ bed?
   a in b to c at
13 She _______ late for class.
   a never is b is never c never does
14 I _______ early.
   a usually get up b get usually c get up usually
15 I have an English class _______.
   a one a week b one the week c once a week

VOCABULARY

a. Complete with at, to, in, on, or up.
1 _______ Saturday night I go to the cinema.
2 I'm a student. I'm _______ university and I live _______ a flat.
3 What time do you usually wake _______?
4 What time do you go _______ work?

b. Complete the phrases with these verbs.
do get go have listen play read take watch wear
1 _______ dressed 6 _______ the guitar
2 _______ the dog for a walk 7 _______ to music
3 _______ a shower 8 _______ TV
4 _______ your homework 9 _______ the newspaper
5 _______ shopping 10 _______ glasses

c. Circle the word or phrase that is different.
1 brother uncle niece grandfather
2 husband mother-in-law step sister aunt
3 musician doctor journalist factory
4 never early always often
5 hour minute once second

d. Complete the questions with How many, Who, Why, What, or Where.
1 _______ do you live?
2 _______ does your father do?
3 _______ is your favourite family member?
4 _______ hours do you work?
5 _______ do you want to learn English?

PRONUNCIATION

a. Circle the word with a different sound.
1 work here earn turn
2 sometimes cousin nurse uncle
3 often home coffee doctor
4 father that brother think
5 /lz/ lives watches finishes relaxes

b. Underline the stressed syllable.
1 because 3 unemployed 5 grandmother
2 dentist 4 policeman
CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

a Read the text and complete the gaps with these verbs in the correct form.

do drink drive earn eat have (x2) know live spend think travel work

b Read the text again. Is a typical man from your country similar to the typical British man?

c Look at the highlighted words or phrases in the text and guess their meaning.

Is this the typical British man?

Statistics tell us that the typical British man is 40 years old, lives in a house and is married with two children. He works more than 40 hours a week and about £25,000 a year. He stays between fifty minutes and an hour to and from work every day. He owns a Ford car and he is a good driver.

The typical British man is overweight (he weighs about 82.5 kg) and he exercises less than 30 minutes a week. He usually sleeps about seven hours a night. He is not a great cook, but he how to make four dishes, including Spaghetti Bolognese. He three cups of tea a day and during his life he approximately 35,000 biscuits.

The typical British man has eight close friends and more than eighty contacts on his mobile phone. He three TVs, a copy of Queen’s Greatest Hits, and at least one of the Harry Potter books. He thirteen hours online every week and forty-five hours a year waiting ‘on hold’ on the phone.

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

2:53 In the street Watch or listen to five people and answer the questions.

Nick Anya Alison Wells Stacey

1 Nick works between _____ hours a week.
   a 20 and 30  b 30 and 40  c 40 and 50

2 Anya’s sister is ________.
   a 20  b 15  c 16

3 Alison usually gets up at about ________ at the weekend.
   a 10.00  b 7.00  c 7.30

4 Wells ________ does sport.
   a hardly ever  b sometimes  c often

5 Stacey ________.
   a has a cat  b has two cats  c doesn’t like cats

CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

Do the tasks with a partner. Tick (√) the box if you can do them.

Can you...

1 say where you live and what you do
2 say what time you usually get up and go to bed
3 say what you do on a typical Monday morning
4 ask your partner questions with the words below
   • What sports...? • What languages...?
   • What kind of music...? • What TV programmes...?

Short films a British policeman Watch and enjoy a film on iTutor.
1 VOCABULARY verb phrases
   a Can you remember the verbs for things
   people do in their free time?
   d ___ exercise   p ___ the guitar
   l ___ to music   g ___ to the gym
   w ___ TV         h ___ a coffee
   b ➤ p.158 Vocabulary Bank More verb
   phrases.

2 GRAMMAR can / can't
   a Read about Gary’s audition for a British TV
   programme where people try to become
   professional singers. Complete it with
   phrases a–e.
   a Can you come with me, please?
   b I can’t remember the words!
   c You can have coffee downstairs.
   d We can’t hear you.
   e Where can I park?
   b 2:55 Listen and check.
   c 2:56 Now listen to Gary and two other
   people (Justin and Naomi) sing. Vote for the
   person you want to be in the show.
   d 2:57 Listen to the judges. What do they
   say about each singer? How does Gary feel?
   e Look at four sentences with can / can't.
   Match sentences 1–4 with a–d.
   1 [ ] You can’t sing!
   2 [ ] You can’t park here.
   3 [ ] Can you come with me, please?
   4 [ ] You can have coffee downstairs.
   a It isn’t OK.
   b It’s possible.
   c Please do it.
   d You don’t know how.
   f ➤ p.132 Grammar Bank 5A. Learn more
   about can / can’t and practise it.
3 PRONUNCIATION  sentence stress

a  2:59 Listen and repeat the dialogues. Copy the rhythm.
A Can you come tomorrow?
B Yes, I can come in the morning.
A Can you play a musical instrument?
B Yes, I can.
A What can you play?
B I can play the guitar.
A Can we park here?
B No, you can't. You can't park here.

b  2:60 Listen. Can you hear the difference?
1 a I can sing.
   b I can't sing.
2 a She can dance very well.
   b She can't dance very well.
3 a He can cook.
   b He can't cook.
4 a I can come to the meeting.
   b I can't come to the meeting.
5 a You can park here.
   b You can't park here.
6 a I can drive.
   b I can't drive.

c  2:61 Listen. Circle a or b.

4 SPEAKING

a Communication Do you want to be famous? p.102. Are you musical, artistic, sporty, or good with words? Interview your partner and complete the survey.

b Change partners and tell your new partner what your first partner can and can't do.

5 READING

a The X Factor is a British TV programme. Look at the title of the article and the photos. With a partner, guess which two of the singers are 'winners' today. Then read the article and check.

b Look at the highlighted words and phrases related to pop music. With a partner, guess their meaning. Are the words similar in your language?

c Do you have similar programmes to The X Factor in your country? Can you remember the names of some of the winners? Where are they now?

6 2:62 SONG Famous ♫

X FACTOR

WHERE ARE THEY NOW?

'In the future everyone will be famous for fifteen minutes.' Andy Warhol

STEVE BROOKSTEIN
WINNER FIRST SERIES
And then? A recording contract with Sony and a number 1 single. Later a job as a singer on a ferry boat between England and Spain. Today? No recording contract. He gives concerts in pubs in Britain to small audiences.

LEONA LEWIS
WINNER THIRD SERIES
And then? Number 1 hits in the USA and UK and top ten records in many other countries. An appearance at the Olympic opening ceremony and three Grammy awards.
And today? She has a new album coming soon.

LEON JACKSON
WINNER FOURTH SERIES
And then? A recording contract with Sony and a number 1 single, When you believe.
And today? He gives concerts in small nightclubs and pubs in the UK. He now plays the guitar and piano, too, but he doesn't have a recording contract.

ALEXANDRA BURKE
WINNER FIFTH SERIES
And then? 1 million copies sold of her version of Leonard Cohen's Hallelujah. Three number 1 singles.
And today? She has a recording contract with Epic Records and she is also the face of Sure Women, a deodorant.
5B Love your neighbours

1 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING
verb phrases

a (3.2) Read the article about neighbours. Then listen to eight sounds, and write a–h in the boxes.

Noisy neighbours
the top problems!

Sometimes it is difficult to love your neighbours, especially when they make a lot of noise. These are some things people do that cause problems in the UK (not in order).

☐ Their babies cry.
☐ Their dogs bark.
☐ They talk loudly or argue a lot.
☐ They have noisy parties.
☐ Their children shout all the time.
☐ They have the TV on very loud.
☐ They play loud music.
☐ They play musical instruments.

b Which do you think are the top three in the UK? Which do you think are the top three in your country?

c Do the questionnaire with a partner.

Are your neighbours noisy?
Are you a noisy neighbour?

1 Do you live in a house or a flat?
2 Do you have neighbours...?
   a upstairs
   b downstairs
   c next door
3 Are your neighbours...?
   a very noisy
   b quite noisy
   c not very noisy
4 Which of the things in a do they do? Do they make any other noises?
5 Are you a noisy neighbour? Which of the things in a do you or your family do?
2 GRAMMAR present continuous
a (3 3) Look at the picture of the flats. Why do you think the couple in flat 5 can’t sleep? Listen and check.

b Listen again and complete the dialogues with verbs from the list.

arguing crying doing getting going happening having saying shouting (x2)

W Man Are you awake?
W Woman Yes, what’s that noise?
M They’re ______ a party downstairs.
W Woman Again! What time is it?
M 12.00.

W W Who’s ______?
M Man People in the street. From the party.
W W What’s ______? Why are they ______?
M M I can’t hear.
W W Are they ______?
M M No, they aren’t. They’re ______ goodbye.
   Excuse me! We’re trying to sleep. It’s 1.00 in the morning!

W W M Oh no. Now the baby next door is ______!
W W W W What’s the time?
M M It’s 5.00.
W W W W What are you ______? Where are you ______?
M M I’m ______ up. I can’t sleep with that noise.

3 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING /ŋ/ a (3 6) Listen and repeat the words and sound.
singing dancing going doing
studying language wrong young
think bank pink thanks

b In pairs, point and ask and answer about the people in the flats.
W What’s he doing?
M He’s playing the guitar.
W What are they doing?

C Communication Spot the differences A p.102 B p.107. Describe the pictures and find eight differences.

4 LISTENING
a (3 7) Look at the photo and read about Rebecca Flint. Then listen to her talking about noise rules where she lives. Does she think they are a good thing or a bad thing?

Switzerland
The sound of silence

Switzerland has very strict anti-noise rules, especially for people who live in flats. Rebecca Flint, a British woman who lives and works in the Swiss town of Chur, tells us about a life without noise.

b Listen again and complete the sentences.

During the week
1 She can’t __________ between 12.30 and 2.00 p.m.
2 She can’t __________ without headphones
   or _______ after 10 p.m.
3 She can’t have a _______ or a _______ after 10 p.m.

On Saturdays
4 She can ________, but it can’t be loud after 10 p.m.

On Sundays
5 She can’t _______ furniture or put a _______ on
   the wall.
6 She can’t _______ the washing machine.

c Do you think these are good or bad rules? Why (not)? Do you have any similar rules in your country? What happens if you make a lot of noise late at night?
1 VOCABULARY & LISTENING
the weather and seasons

a Look at the photo and answer the questions.
1 What city is it?
2 What monument can you see?
3 What's the weather like? Do you think it's typical weather there?

b 3:10 Listen to a travel guide talking about the weather in London. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
1 It's often very hot or very cold.
2 The normal temperature in the summer is 32°C.
3 It often snows in the winter.
4 In spring and summer the weather changes a lot.
5 It's often grey and foggy in London.

d What's the weather like where you live in the different seasons?

2 READING & SPEAKING

a Read the guidebook extract about things to do in London, and find the answers to the ‘Where can you…?’ questions. Answer with SH (Somerset House), SK (South Kensington), or HH (Hampstead Heath).

b Read the text again. Underline three new words in each paragraph. Compare with a partner.

c Talk to a partner.
- Which of the three places would you prefer to go to? Why?
- Where is a good place to go in your town…?
  - when it's very cold
  - when it's raining
  - when the sun is shining
- What can you do in these places?

WHERE CAN YOU…?
1 [ ] learn to do something new
2 [ ] eat outside
3 [ ] have a fantastic view
4 [ ] see beautiful old clothes
5 [ ] do some exercise
6 [ ] have fun after 9 p.m.
7 [ ] see some animals that don't exist today
8 [ ] see a famous character from a book
3 GRAMMAR present simple or present continuous?

a 3 11) Jack and his Swedish girlfriend Ingrid are on the London Eye. Cover the conversation and listen. Tick (✓) the places they see.

☐ Trafalgar Square ☐ St Paul's Cathedral
☐ Buckingham Palace ☐ Westminster Abbey
☐ The Houses of Parliament ☐ Big Ben

b Listen to the conversation again, and put the verbs in brackets into the present continuous or the present simple.

I Come on, let's stand over there.
J It's moving. (move). We _________ (go) up. Look, that's St Paul's Cathedral.
I Where? Oh yes, I can see it. Is that Buckingham Palace?
J Yes, and the Queen's at home.
I How do you know?
J Because the flag _________ (fly), it only _________ (fly) when she's at home.

I I think it _________ (start) to rain. Oh, yes look, it _________ (rain).
J It always _________ (rain) when we're sightseeing!
I We _________ (go) down now. I _________ (love) the view of the river with Big Ben and the Houses of Parliament.
J Me too. Go and stand there. I _________ (want) to take a photo.

I Quick, the door _________ (open). Let's go.

c Read the conversation again, and focus on the verbs fly and rain. When do we use the present simple? When do we use the present continuous?

d ➤ p.132 Grammar Bank SC. Learn more about the present simple and present continuous and practise them.


4 PRONUNCIATION places in London

a 3 13) Place names in London are sometimes difficult for visitors to pronounce and understand. Listen. Underline the stressed syllable in the bold words.

Trafalgar Square the London Eye Oxford Street St Paul's Cathedral
Leicester Square Buckingham Palace The Houses of Parliament
Westminster Abbey the River Thames Covent Garden

b Listen again and repeat the names.

c Practise with a partner. Imagine you are in a taxi.

Where do you want to go? To Trafalgar Square, please.

5 WRITING

a Are social networking sites, e.g. Twitter or Facebook, popular in your country? What kind of people use them? Do you or your friends use them?

b ➤ p.113 Writing Social networking. Write Facebook posts to say what you are doing on holiday.
1 VOCABULARY clothes

a Match the words and pictures.

1 a jacket /dʒeɪkɪt/ 2 a skirt /ˈærkt/ 3 shoes /ʃuːz/ 4 jeans /ˈdʒɛnz/ 5 a shirt /ʃɜːt/ 6 a sweater /ˈswɛtər/ 7 a T-shirt /ˈtiːʃirt/ 8 trousers /ˈtraʊzərz/

b ③14 Listen and check. Practise saying the words.

2 MEETING IN THE STREET

a ③15 Watch or listen to Jenny and Rob. What problem does Rob have?

b Watch or listen again. Complete the sentences.

1 Rob has a ______ for Jenny.
2 Jenny has another meeting with ______.
3 Rob has an interview in ______ minutes.
4 Jenny’s meeting is at ______ past nine.
5 Rob needs to buy a new ______.
6 They go to a clothes ______.
7 Jenny needs to answer her ______.

c ③16 Look at the information box. Listen and repeat the phrases.

D Apologizing
I’m sorry. That’s OK.
I’m so sorry. Don’t worry.
I’m really sorry. No problem.

d Cover the box. In pairs, practise apologizing and responding.

3 BUYING CLOTHES

a ③17 Watch or listen to Rob buying a shirt. Answer the questions.

1 What size does Rob want?
2 Does he try it on?
3 How much is the shirt?
b) Watch or listen again. Complete the You Hear phrases.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>You Hear</th>
<th>You Say</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Can I ______ you?</td>
<td>Yes, what size is this shirt?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Let's see. It's a small.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What ______ do you need?</td>
<td>A medium.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This is a ______.</td>
<td>Thanks. Where can I try it on?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The changing ______ are over there.</td>
<td>Thank you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>______ is it?</td>
<td>It's fine. How much is it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's £44.99.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c) (3.18) Watch or listen and repeat the You Say phrases. Copy the rhythm.

Saying prices
- £5.00 = five pounds
- £5.50 = five pounds fifty
- 50p = fifty pence

Sizes
- Sizes S = small, M = medium, L = large, XL = extra large

d) Practise the dialogue with a partner.

e) ( ) In pairs, roleplay buying clothes.

A (book open) You are the shop assistant. Start with Can I help you?

B (book closed) You are the customer. Buy a T-shirt, a jacket, or jeans.

f) Swap roles.

4) JENNY'S ON THE PHONE

a) (3.19) Watch or listen and mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).

1. Jenny is talking to Eddie.
2. She says she doesn't like London.
3. She says she likes the people in the office.
4. Jenny is standing outside the shop.
5. Eddie thinks that Rob is her boss.

b) Watch or listen again. Say why the F sentences are false.

c) Look at the Social English phrases. Who says them: Jenny, Rob, or Eddie?

Social English phrases
- It's so cool!
- I have to go.
- Right now?
- Have fun!
- Don't be silly!
- What's wrong?
- Wait a minute.
- No way!

British and American English
- shop = British English
- store = American English

d) (3.20) Watch or listen and check. Do you know what they are in your language?

e) Watch or listen again and repeat the phrases.
1 GRAMMAR object pronouns

a. Look at the three book covers and read the information which tells you what the book is about. Answer the questions with Red Roses (RR), Sally's Phone (SP), or Dead Man's Money (DMM).

Which book...?
1. ___ is a love story
2. ___ takes place in the USA
3. ___ is about a person who is quite stressed
4. ___ is about a man in a difficult situation
5. ___ is about a person who is romantic
6. ___ has a gadget which is important

b. Look at the highlighted words in the texts. Who do they refer to?
   - him = the man with the roses

   c. p.134 Grammar Bank 6A. Learn more about object pronouns and practise them,

   d. 3.22 Listen and say the sentences with a pronoun instead of the name(s).

2 PRONUNCIATION /ɪə/, /ɜː/, and /ʌ/

a. 3.23 Say the three groups of words and match them to a sound picture. Listen and check.


   1. him /ɪəm/ his /hɪz/ ring /rɪŋ/ finish /ˈfɪnɪʃ/ pick /pɪk/
   2. he /hiː/ she /ʃiː/ meet /miːt/ read /riːd/ leave /liːv/
   3. my /maɪ/ buy /baɪ/ smile /smɪl/ nice /naɪs/ tonight /ˈtaɪtən/ton/

b. 3.24 Listen. Can you hear the difference?

   a. he's /hez/ his /hɪz/ 4. a /ə/ leave /liːv/ b /biː/ live /laɪv/
   b. me /miː/ my /maɪ/ 5. a /ə/ this /ðɪs/ b /biː/ these /ðiːz/
   c. a /ə/ it /ɪt/ b /biː/ eat /iːt/ 6. a /ə/ we /wiː/ b /biː/ why /waɪ/

c. 3.25 Listen and tick (✓) the word you hear.

   d. 3.26 Listen to this love story. Practise telling it.

   They live in a big city.
   He works in an office, she's a writer.
   She meets him in the gym. She likes his smile.
   He thinks she loves him. He buys her a ring.
   But finally she says goodbye.
3 READING & LISTENING

a 3:27 Read and listen to an extract from Sally's Phone. Answer the questions.

CHARACTERS:
- Sally, a young woman
- Claire, Sally's friend from work
- Andrew, Sally's boyfriend
- Paul, a young man
- Katharine, Paul's sister

1. Where are Claire and Sally?
2. Why doesn't Sally buy the skirt immediately?
3. What do they do when they finish shopping?
4. Why does she phone her mother?
5. What is Paul doing when Sally is talking to her mother?
6. What happens when he stands up?
7. Do they go out of the cafe together?

b Read the extract again. With a partner guess the meaning of the highlighted verbs.

c 3:28 Read and listen to the next part of the story. Why are Paul and Sally having problems?

- Pronouns and possessive adjectives
  When you read, be careful with different kinds of pronouns and possessive adjectives, e.g., he, his, him, etc. Make sure you know who (or what) they refer to.

d Read the extract again. With a partner, say who the highlighted pronouns and possessive adjectives refer to.

Paul wants to phone his mother.  his = Paul's

- Underline words or phrases in the extract about phones or phoning, e.g., rings, answers the phone, etc.

f What do you think happens in the end?

4 SPEAKING

- Communication Reading in English p.103. Interview your partner.

Lunchtime

It is one o'clock. Sally and Claire are looking at skirts.

'Do you like this one, Sally?' Claire says.

'Yes, it's beautiful, but I never wear red.'

'Do you like red?' Claire asks.

'Yes, I do - but Andrew doesn't.'

'Well,' Claire says, 'it's a beautiful skirt.

You like red. What do you want to do?' Sally asks

Claire goes back to work, but Sally wants a coffee. She goes into a cafe. She buys a coffee and sits down. Then she phones her mother.

'Hi, Mum. I have a new skirt - it's beautiful. I want to wear it tonight.'

'What colour is it?'

'It's red.'

'That's nice. Red is a good colour for you,' says her mother. Next to Sally, Paul is finishing his coffee. He phones his friend and talks to him. Then he stands up. The bag with the red skirt falls on the floor.

'Oh! I'm sorry,' Paul says. 'That's OK,' Sally says. He puts down his phone and picks up the bag. 'Here's your bag.'

'Thank you.' She smiles.

'What a nice smile!' Paul thinks.

Paul picks up his phone and goes out of the cafe. Sally finishes her coffee. She picks up her bag and her phone, and goes back to work.

Afternoon

Paul is in his office.

A phone rings.

'What's that noise?' Paul thinks.

He answers the phone. It is Andrew.

'Hello, Sally?'

'It isn't Sally, it's Paul.'

'Paul? Paul who? Where's Sally?'

'Who's Sally? There's no Sally here.'

'Huh!'

Andrew finishes the call.

Paul wants to phone his mother. He finds 'Mum' on the phone, and presses the button.

'Hello Mum. It's Paul.'

'Paul? Who's Paul? I'm not Paul's mum. I'm Sally's mum.'

'What's happening?' Paul thinks.

'What number is that?' he asks.

'It's 0783 491839.'

'I'm very sorry,' Paul says. 'It's the wrong number.'

'That's OK,' Sally's mum says. 'What a nice voice!' she thinks.

Sally is at work.

Ring ring!

She answers the phone.

'Hello, is Paul there?'

'No, I'm sorry, this is...' She pauses.

'Can you give me a message to him? This is his sister Katharine. There's a party at my house tonight. It's my birthday.'

'But I...'

'8 o'clock - OK. Bye.'
6B Times we love

1 VOCABULARY & PRONUNCIATION the date

a Number the months 1–6.
- April
- February
- January
- June
- March
- May

b ➤ p.159 Vocabulary Bank The weather and dates. Do part 2.

- Ordinal numbers first, fourth, etc. Some ordinal numbers can be difficult to say because they end in two or more consonant sounds, e.g. sixth [sɪksθ].

c ③ Listen and repeat the ordinal numbers. Then practise saying them.
- fifth
- sixth
- eighth
- twelfth

d ④ Listen and repeat these dates. Copy the rhythm.
- 1/3
- 2/11
- 3/5
- 4/6
- 6/7
- 12/9
- 17/10
- 20/8
- 23/2
- 28/4
- 31/12

e Listen again and repeat the dates. Copy the rhythm.

f What are your public holidays in your country?

- The first of March

- Ask the other students in your class When’s your birthday? Does anyone have the same (or nearly the same) birthday as you?

2 READING

a Read the first part of the text. What’s special about the third Monday in January and the third Friday in June?

Favourite Times

In the UK the third Monday in January is the most depressing day of the year, says psychologist Dr Cliff Arnall, who calls it Blue Monday. Why? Because it’s winter, the weather is usually grey and cold, the days are dark, and Monday is the first day of the working week. People are also often short of money after Christmas, and some people feel bad after breaking their New Year resolutions. And the happiest day of the year? The third Friday in June, says Dr Arnall. And it’s easy to see why - it’s summer, it’s warm outside, the evenings are light, and the weekend starts now!

We asked our readers about the days and times during the year that make them feel good.

1 What’s your favourite time of day? Why?
2 What’s your favourite day of the week? Why?
3 What’s your favourite month? Why?
4 What’s your favourite season? Why?
5 What’s your favourite public holiday? Why?

b Read the questions and Joe’s and Rose’s answers and complete them with phrases a–f.

- a every week is different
- d I love cooking
- b I like making plans
- e the days are long
- c I hate getting up early
- f I like being awake

- c Look at the highlighted words and phrases and guess their meaning.
4 GRAMMAR  like + (verb + -ing)

a. Complete the chart with a verb from the list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>don't like</th>
<th>hate</th>
<th>don't mind</th>
<th>like</th>
<th>love</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

b. What form of the verb follows like, love, don’t mind, and hate?

c. p.134 Grammar Bank 6B. Learn more about like + (verb + -ing) and practise it.

5 SPEAKING & WRITING

a. Write a verb or verb phrase for each picture. Use the -ing form of the verb.

![Picture 1](image1.png)

b. In pairs, ask and answer about each activity.

A: Do you like reading?
B: Yes, I love it.

A: What writers do you like?
B: I like Terry Pratchett. What about you?

c. Interview your partner with the five questions from Favourite Times in 2.

d. Write an article called My favourite times. Add photos or drawings if you can. Use the texts in 2 as a model.

3 LISTENING

a. (3:33) Listen to Martin answering the questions in Favourite Times. Complete column 1.

1 What's your favourite...?  2 Why?

time of day: during the week ________  at the weekend ________
day of the week ________  ________
month ________  ________
season ________  ________
public holiday ________  ________

b. Listen again and complete column 2.

asparagus  Easter egg  New Year resolutions  promises we make on December 31st, e.g. to eat or drink less in the new year
Easter Sunday  an important Christian holiday in March or April
Music is changing their lives

1 Vocabulary music
   a. Listen and number the kinds of music 1–9. Can you name any other kinds of music in English?
      - hip hop
      - rock
      - classical
      - Latin
      - jazz
      - reggae [regiː]
      - blues
      - heavy metal
      - R&B
   b. What kind of music do you like? (I like rock, but I don't like R&B)
   c. Do the music quiz in small groups.

MUSIC QUIZ

1. What kind of music are these people famous for?
   a. Beyoncé
   b. Louis Armstrong
   c. Jay-Z
   d. Yehudi Menuhin
   e. Queen
   f. Bob Marley

2. Where are they from? Match the singers and bands to their countries.
   a. Coldplay
   b. Rihanna
   c. Placido Domingo
   d. Black Eyed Peas
   e. U2
   f. Fools Garden
   1. Germany
   2. Ireland
   3. Britain
   4. Barbados
   5. Spain
   6. the USA

3. Whose music do you hear in the soundtrack of these films/shows?
   a. We Will Rock You
   b. This Is It
   c. Yellow Submarine
   d. Amadeus
   e. Mamma Mia!

2 Grammar revision: be or do?
   a. Circle the right words.
      1. What kind of music are you / do you listen to?
      2. I'm not / I don't like hip hop.
      3. Are you / Do you play in a band?
      4. She isn't / doesn't listening to you.
      5. Where are / do Coldplay from?

   b. p.134 Grammar Bank 6C. Learn more about 'be' and 'do' and practise them.

   c. 38 Listen and make the questions.
      1) They're German. Are they German?
      2) He plays the guitar. Does he play the guitar?

3 Pronunciation /j/
   a. 39 Listen and repeat the words and sound.
      - yacht
      - yes
      - you
      - yellow
      - young
      - year

      Hidden /j/ sound
      Some words with the /uː/ sound (spelled with u or ew) also have a /j/ sound before the /uː/, e.g. music /'mjuzɪk/; NOT /'menzɪk/.

   b. 40 Listen and repeat the sentences. Then practise saying them.
      1. That young musician plays beautiful music.
      2. He usually uses a yellow pencil.
      3. The new students start in January this year.
4 **SPEAKING**

a. Read the music questionnaire. Complete the questions with *are* or *do*. Complete question 6 with the names of six musicians / bands you either love or hate.

### Music questionnaire

1. ________ you a big fan of a singer or band? ________ you a member of a fan club or forum?
2. How often ________ you...?
   - go to concerts or gigs
   - go dancing
   - watch MTV (or other music channels)
   - download music
   - look for song lyrics on the internet
   - sing karaoke
3. How ________ you usually listen to music?
   - on the radio
   - online
   - on your iPod/MP3 player
   - on CDs
4. What kind of music ________ you like listening to when you are...?
   - sad
   - happy
   - stressed
5. ________ you listening to a particular song or piece of music a lot at the moment?
6. What ________ you think of...?
   - Male musicians
   - Female musicians
   - Bands

**Giving opinions**

- I like him.
- I don't like her.
- I think they're great / fantastic.
- OK / not bad.
- awful / terrible.

b. Take turns to interview a partner with the music questionnaire. Ask for more information. Do you have similar musical tastes?

5 **READING**

a. Do you play a musical instrument? What? Do you enjoy playing it?

b. Read the article. How is music changing the lives of young people in Venezuela?

### Music is changing their lives

Inside the **concert hall** a top **orchestra** is playing brilliantly. Their young **conductor**, Gustavo Dudamel, is one of the best in the world. But we are not in New York, London, or Vienna. We are in Caracas, the capital of Venezuela. The orchestra is the Simón Bolívar Youth Orchestra, and its conductor and young musicians come from the poorest families in the country. They are a product of **El Sistema** (*the system* in Spanish), a project started in 1975 to save poor children from crime and drug addiction through classical music.

Today more than 270,000 young Venezuelans from the **barrios** (poor areas in Caracas) are learning to play instruments. They **practise** Beethoven and Brahms instead of learning to steal and shoot. Gisella, aged 11, says 'I am learning the **viola** because I want to escape from the **barrio**. In Venezuela now it's cooler to like Strauss than salsa. Edgar, 22, who plays in the orchestra, says 'sometimes when we finish late I stay in town – it's dangerous to go home at that time. But now most of my friends are here. We are a family as well as an orchestra.'

Dudamel is now also the Musical Director of the Los Angeles Philharmonic, one of the USA's top orchestras. But he returns frequently to Caracas to conduct. 'I miss my orchestra, but I will never leave them. They're family,' he says.

c. Look at the highlighted words. With a partner, guess their meaning.

d. Do you know of any other projects to help poor children?

6 **WRITING**

- p.113 Writing An informal email. You are going to write a similar email to a penfriend.

7 **SONG** Lemon Tree 🎶
GRAMMAR
Circle a, b, or c.
1. She ______ the piano.
   a can play  b can to play  c can play
2. ______ come tonight?
   a Do you can  b You can  c Can you
3. A What's that noise?
   B ______ a party upstairs.
   a They having
   b They're having
   c They're have
4. The weather is cold, but ______ raining.
   a it doesn't  b it isn't  c it not
5. A What ______ doing?
   B I'm studying for an exam.
   a are you  b do you  c you are
6. Look! The Queen's flag ______.
   a fly  b flies  c is flying
7. The museum ______ at 2:00 on Mondays.
   a closes  b is closing  c close
8. A What ______?
   B I'm a nurse.
   a are you doing  b do you do  c do you
9. Our son always phones ______ every day.
   a we  b us  c our
10. Is your sister at home? I need to speak to ______.
    a him  b she  c her
11. Do you like ______ housework?
    a doing  b do making
12. I don't mind ______ early.
    a get up  b getting up  c to get up
13. A ______ hungry?
    B Yes. What's for dinner?
    a Do you  b Have you  c Are you
14. What song ______ listening to?
    a are you  b do you  c you are
15. What time ______ she usually go to bed?
    a do  b is  c does

VOCABULARY
a. Complete the phrases with these verbs.

buy  call  dance  forget  have  hear  play  run  take  tell

1. ______ a noise  6. ______ a party
2. ______ a musical instrument  7. ______ photos
3. ______ somebody's birthday  8. ______ a marathon
4. ______ a present for your mother  9. ______ a taxi
5. ______ somebody a secret  10. ______ a tango

b. Complete the sentences with for, in, on, to, or at.

1. She goes to bed ______ about eleven o'clock.
2. They have their TV ______ very loud.
3. I can't find the keys. Can you look ______ them?
4. I need to talk ______ the doctor.
5. I'm coming! Wait ______ me!
7. Their wedding is ______ 2nd March.

c. (Circle) the word that is different.

1. cloudy  wet  snowy  shine
2. shine  rain  blow  fog
3. autumn  season  spring  winter
4. first  third  seven  twelfth
5. twenty-second  twenty-five  twenty-one  twenty-three
6. May  Sunday  December  June
7. call  phone  ring  message
8. band  rock  reggae  jazz

PRONUNCIATION
a. (Circle) the word with a different sound.

1. driving  wrong  change  long
2. ice  windy  spring  winter
3. snow  go  now  cold
4. third  the  tenth  Thursday
5. /ju:/  music  student  beautiful  blues

b. Underline the stressed syllable.

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

a Read the text and answer the questions.

Where is a good place to go in Dublin if you want to...?
1 have lunch or dinner
2 see animals
3 buy a present
4 hear stories about famous places
5 have a drink without paying

b Look at the highlighted words or phrases in the text and guess their meaning.

c Read the text again and underline the thing you would like to do most.

---

Dublin – the friendly city

People don’t usually think of capital cities as friendly, but people told me that Dublin is the exception, so I went there to see if it was true – and it was! Local people greet you like an old friend; they want to know everything about you, and about your day. The tourist guides are really friendly; for example, at the Guinness factory (somewhere you must go) they offer you a free glass of Guinness. The bus drivers on the tour buses (an excellent way to get around Dublin) tell very interesting and amusing stories about all the buildings and monuments they go past. They stop at all the main tourist attractions, for example Phoenix Park, the home to Dublin’s zoo, St Patrick’s Cathedral, and the main shopping areas (Grafton Street and O’Connell Street). When you want something to eat, the Temple Bar area is the place to go. Even in the restaurants Irish people want you to be happy. They often sit you at tables with other people, and the waiters tell jokes when they serve the food to make you laugh. In general, the food is great and very good value for money, there are lots of things to see, and hotels are cheap – how can you not be happy and friendly with all that?

Nick McCarthy Coventry Telegraph October 26 2010

---

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

1 Which sentence is true?
   a Ben can’t play a musical instrument.
   b Alison can play the guitar well.
   c Ben can play the guitar, but not very well.

2 Tiffany ____.
   a has noisy neighbours
   b doesn’t have noisy neighbours
   c is the noisy neighbour

3 Joel’s favourite month is May because the weather is ________.
   a hot b nice c sunny

4 Ben doesn’t like ________.
   a classical music b heavy metal c rock music

5 At the moment Anya is reading ________.
   a a romantic novel b a biography c a trilogy

CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

Do the tasks with a partner. Tick (✔) the box if you can do them.

Can you...?

1 □ say two things you can do well, and two things you can’t do (e.g. cook)

2 □ say three things you can or can’t do in class (e.g. use your mobile)

3 □ say what kind of books you usually read, and what you are reading at the moment

4 □ ask your partner questions with the words below ...
   a tired? b Why?
   c like watching sport on TV? d Which sports?
   e enjoying your English classes?
   f play a musical instrument? Which one?

---

Short films Williamsburg, New York
Watch and enjoy a film on iTutor.
1 **GRAMMAR** was / were

a Read about the National Portrait Gallery in London and answer the questions.
1 Where is it?
2 What can you see there?
3 When is it open?
4 How much does it cost?

b **(3 43)** Look at a photo which is in the National Portrait gallery. Cover the dialogue and listen. Who are the two people in the photo?

A I love that photo. Who are they?
B I think it’s King Edward VIII and Wallis Simpson. Let’s see. Yes, that’s right.
A When was he king? I don’t remember a King Edward.
B Well, he was only king for 11 months, in 1936, I think. He was Queen Elizabeth II’s uncle.
A Why was he only king for a short time?
B Because he was in love with Wallis Simpson, the woman in the photo. She was American. The government was against the marriage because she was divorced. It was a terrible scandal. In the end he abdicated* and they got married.
A Who was the next king?
B His brother, George VI.
A Were Edward and Wallis happy?
B I think they were happy. They were together for the rest of their lives.

*abdicate* stop being king or queen

c Listen again and read the dialogue. Then complete the gaps.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present simple</th>
<th>Past simple</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He is the king.</td>
<td>He ______ the king.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She is divorced.</td>
<td>She ______ divorced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They are happy.</td>
<td>They ______ happy.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

d **(p.136 Grammar Bank 7A)** Learn more about was / were and practise it.

2 **PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING** sentence stress

a **(3 45)** Listen and repeat. Copy the rhythm.
   I was at a party. She was born in Mexico.
   My parents were angry.
   He wasn’t at home. They weren’t very happy.
   When were you born? Where was the hotel?
   Was it expensive? No, it wasn’t.
   Were they at the concert? Yes, they were.

b **(3 46)** Say the sentences in the past simple.
   I’m at home. I was at home.

c **Communication** Where were you? A p.103 B p.108.
3 READING
a Look at three more pictures from the National Portrait Gallery. Do you know who the people are or anything about them?

b (3 47) Read and listen to three audio guide extracts. Check your answers to a.

1 Henry VII was born in 1491. He was King of England from 1509 to 1547 and is famous for separating the Church of England from the Roman Catholic Church, and for his six wives. When he was young, as in this picture, he was very strong and good-looking. He was an excellent sportsman, and was also a good musician and poet. However, in his old age he was very fat and always in pain.

2 The Brontë sisters, Charlotte, Emily, and Anne, were born between 1816 and 1820 in a small village in the north of England. They were all writers, but only Charlotte, with her novel Jane Eyre, was famous in her lifetime. Their brother Branwell, the painter of this portrait, was originally in the picture between Emily and Charlotte. He wasn’t happy with his self-portrait and now the painting shows only the three sisters.

3 Helena Bonham Carter, the actress, was born in London in 1966. Her mother is half Spanish and her father, who died in 2004, was the grandson of Herbert Asquith, the British Prime Minister from 1908 to 1916. Her first big role was as Lucy Honeychurch in A Room with a View, and her other roles include The Red Queen in Alice in Wonderland, Bellatrix Lestrange in the Harry Potter films, and Queen Elizabeth in The King’s Speech. She has two children with her partner Tim Burton, a film director.

c Read the texts again and answer the questions.
1 How long was Henry VIII King of England?
2 What was he good at when he was a young man?
3 Were the Brontë sisters famous when they were alive?
4 Why isn’t their brother in the picture?
5 Who was Helena Bonham Carter’s great-grandfather?
6 What was her first famous film?

d Cover the texts. What can you remember?
1 READING & LISTENING

a 3:50 Read and listen to the true story about a journey. Number the sentences 1–7.

☐ The taxi arrived at the girls’ house.
☐ They looked out of the window.
☐ They chatted and listened to music.
☐ The girls wanted to go to a match.
☐ The taxi stopped in a street with pretty houses.
☐ They called a taxi.
☐ The taxi driver typed their destination into his satnav.

b 3:51 Listen and check. Do you think they were in London?

c 3:52 Listen to the news story on the radio. Where were they?

d Communication Stamford Bridge p.103. Read some tourist information about the place they were in and look at the map.

e Do you think it is easy to make a mistake like this? Whose fault was it?

2 GRAMMAR

past simple: regular verbs

a Read the text again and highlight ten more past simple regular verbs ☐, one past simple negative sentence ☐, and one past simple question ☐.

b In pairs, complete the chart and answer questions 1–3.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present simple</th>
<th>Past simple</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>They want to go to the match.</td>
<td>They ________ to go to the match.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They don’t talk to the taxi driver.</td>
<td>They ________ to the taxi driver.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where do you want to go?</td>
<td>Where ________ to go?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 What letters do you add to a regular verb in the past simple, e.g. call?
2 What do you do if the verb ends in e, e.g. type?
3 What happens to verbs which end with one vowel and one consonant, e.g. chat, stop?

c p.136 Grammar Bank 7B. Learn more about past simple regular verbs and practise them.

The taxi journey

Charles Spencer, Princess Diana’s brother, has three daughters, 18-year-old Kitty, and 15-year-old twins Eliza and Amelia. They live in Althorp, a large country house near Northampton, about 85 miles (136 kilometres) north of London.

One of the sisters and her friend wanted to go to a football match in London. It was a Premier League match between Chelsea and Arsenal at Stamford Bridge. They called a taxi to take them to London and back. The taxi arrived and the driver typed Stamford Bridge into his satnav. The girls relaxed in the back of the car. They probably chatted, listened to music on their iPods, and texted their friends. They didn’t talk to the taxi driver.

Two hours later the taxi stopped. They looked out of the window. It was a street with pretty houses.

The girls were a bit surprised, and they asked the taxi driver where they were. ‘In Stamford Bridge,’ he said. ‘Where did you want to go?’
d) Stand up and move around the class. Ask *Did you... yesterday?* questions with the verb phrases below. When somebody answers *Yes, I did*, write their name.

**YESTERDAY**

Find a person who...

- used satnav
- watched a football match
- chatted online
- studied for an exam
- cooked dinner
- arrived at work/school late
- listened to the radio
- started a new book
- worked/studied until late
- played a computer game

**Past time expressions**

- yesterday morning
- last night
- last month
- three days ago
- five minutes ago
- last week
- last summer
- the day before yesterday
- a year ago
- in 2009

Did you use satnav yesterday? ☐ No, I didn’t. Did you...?

**3 PRONUNCIATION -ed endings**

**Past simple regular verbs**

The *e* in *-ed* is not usually pronounced, and *-ed* is pronounced /ɪd/ or /t/, e.g. closed /kləʊzd/, stopped /stɒpt/.

The *-ed* is pronounced /ɪd/ or /t/ only in verbs which end with the sound /ɪ/ or /ʌ/, e.g. waited /'wɛɪtɪd/, ended /'endɪd/.

**a** (3 54) Listen and repeat the verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 -ed = /ɪd/</th>
<th>2 -ed = /t/</th>
<th>3 -ed = /ʌd/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>called</td>
<td>locked</td>
<td>wanted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrived</td>
<td>relaxed</td>
<td>chatted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>listened</td>
<td>stopped</td>
<td>texted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**b** (3 55) Look at the verbs in the list. Circle the ones that belong to group 3. Listen and check.

played finished started travelled asked missed cooked needed watched lived liked typed

**c** (3 56) Listen to some verb phrases. Make true ☑ or ☐ sentences about yesterday.

1) play tennis ☐ I played tennis yesterday.
   ☑ I didn’t play tennis yesterday.

**4 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING**

**past time expressions**

a) Number the past time expressions 1–10.

☐ yesterday morning
☐ last night
☐ last month
☐ three days ago
☐ five minutes ago
☐ last week
☐ last summer
☐ the day before yesterday
☐ a year ago
☐ in 2009

**Past time expressions**

We say last week, last month NOT the last week, the last month.

b) (3 57) Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.

c) Look at the questionnaire below. Tell your partner true sentences with past time expressions. Ask for more information.

I cried at the end of a film last week. ☐ Oh really? What was it?

**When was the last time you...?**

* cried at the end of a film
* travelled by plane
* started a new hobby
* walked more than 10 km
* booked tickets online
* downloaded a song
* played sport
* missed an English class

* watched a really good film
* called a friend
* danced
7C A night to remember

1 READING

a Look at the photos and read the introduction to the article. For each photo, say why you think the night was memorable.

b Read about two people's nights, and match them to a photo.

c Read the texts again and match the questions to their answers in the texts.

- What time did you get back?
- What did you wear?
- What was the weather like?
- Who were you with?
- Why was it a memorable night?
- What did you do?
- When was it? Where were you?

Why do we remember some nights in our lives?

Is it because we went to a beautiful place, met interesting people, heard wonderful music, or saw a fantastic film? We asked people all over the world to tell us about a night that they can never forget...

Maria Julia from Argentina

1. It was in August two years ago when I was on holiday in Athens.

2. I wanted to see a man that I knew a little when I was at university. He was Greek and he lived in Athens. I called him many times, but he didn't answer. Suddenly, on my last night, he came to my hotel.

3. I felt embarrassed, because my clothes weren't very special — a green skirt and a white T-shirt and Greek sandals — and my hair was a mess.

4. We went out and walked around the centre of Athens. We spoke English, but he taught me some Greek words and I taught him some Spanish.

5. It was a warm night with a beautiful full moon.

6. I got back to the hotel at 3 a.m.

7. It was a magical evening — an Argentinian woman with a Greek man on the other side of the world in those dark streets, with the lights from the Parthenon up on the hill!

Mehmet from Turkey

1. It was last year. I was in Istanbul, where I live.

2. I was with my friends. It was my best friend's birthday.

3. I wore a black T-shirt and blue jeans.

4. We went to a great place called Cezayir. It's an old building with a great restaurant. We had dinner, and after dinner we had a coffee in the bar. Then we went to the beach at Florya and we had a swim. It was fantastic. The water wasn't very clean, but we didn't mind!

5. It was a hot night and the sea was really warm.

6. After our swim, we were tired and decided to go back, but I couldn't find my car keys! We went back to the beach and we looked everywhere, but it was too dark. In the end I left the car at the beach and I went home in my friend's car! I got home really late, at 5:00 in the morning.

7. It was a memorable night because we had a fantastic dinner and swim, but also because I lost the car keys — it was my father's car and he was really angry!
2 GRAMMAR past simple: irregular verbs

a. Look at the article again and find the past tense of these irregular verbs.

- can: __could__/koʊld/
- come: __came__/kəm/
- feel: __felt__/fɛlt/
- get: __got__/ɡot/
- go: __went__/wɛnt/
- have: __had__/hæd/
- hear: __heard__/hɜːrd/
- know: __knew__/nuː/ 
- leave: __left__/lɛft/
- lose: __lost__/lost/
- meet: __met__/met/
- see: __saw__/sɔː/
- speak: __spoke__/spəʊk/
- teach: __taught__/tɔːt/
- wear: __wore__/wɔr/

b. 3.58 Listen and check. Practise saying the verbs.

c. p.136 Grammar Bank 7C. Learn more about past simple irregular verbs and practise them.

d. Work in pairs. A re-read the text about Maria Julia, B re-read the text about Mehmet.

e. Communication A night to remember
A p.103 B p.108. Test your partner's memory. Whose night do you think was more fun?

3 LISTENING

a. You are going to listen to David from Spain talking about his memorable night. Look at photo C from 1. Where was he? Why was it a memorable night?

b. 3.60 Listen and check.

c. Listen again. Correct the information.

1. It was on 11th August. No, it was on 11th July.
2. He was in Buenos Aires.
3. He watched the match in a restaurant.
4. He wore a Spanish football shirt and a yellow scarf.
5. The match was in the evening.
6. There were a lot of English tourists there.
7. After the match they went to a bar in the city centre.
8. It was quite cold that night.
9. He got to the hotel at 4.00 in the morning.

4 VOCABULARY go, have, get

a. Can you remember these phrases about Mehmet? Write went, had, or got.

1. We __ to a great place called Cezayir.
2. We __ dinner, and after dinner we __ a coffee in the bar.
3. Then we __ to the beach at Florya and we __ a swim.
4. I __ home really late, at 5.00 in the morning.

b. p.160 Vocabulary Bank go, have, get.

5 PRONUNCIATION sentence stress

a. Look at the questions in 'A memorable night' below. What words are missing?

b. 3.62 Listen and repeat the questions. Copy the rhythm.

6 SPEAKING & WRITING

a. Think about a time you had a memorable night. Look at the questions in 5b and plan your answers.

b. Interview your partner about their night.

c. Write about your night. Answer the questions in 5b, and use the article in 1 to help you.

7 3.63 SONG Summer Nights 🎶
1 A FREE MORNING

a (364) Rob and Jenny are planning what to do on their free morning. Watch or listen once. What is the problem?

2 VOCABULARY directions

a Match the words and pictures.
- on the corner /ˈkɔrər/
- at the traffic lights /ˈtræfɪk lɪts/
- a bridge /ˈbrɪdʒ/
- opposite /ˈɒpəzɪt/ 
- turn left /ˈtɜrn lɛft/ 
- turn right /ˈtɜrn rɛt/ 
- go straight on /streɪt/ 
- go past (the church) /pɑːst/ 

b (365) Listen and check.

3 ASKING THE WAY

a (366) Jenny is trying to find the Tate Modern. Watch or listen. Is it A, B, C, or D?

b Watch or listen again. Complete the sentences with a word, a name, or a number.

1 Rob suggests that they go ________.
2 He says that they can ________ bikes.
3 ________ phones ________.
4 Rob needs to interview an ________.
5 Rob asks if he can do the interview on ________.
6 Rob and Jenny arrange to meet at ________ o'clock outside the Tate Modern*.

* Cultural note
The Tate Modern is a famous art gallery in London.
b Watch or listen again. Complete the You Hear phrases.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>You Say</th>
<th>You Hear</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Excuse me, please. Where's the Tate Modern?</td>
<td>The Tate Modern? It's near here, but I don't know exactly. Sorry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excuse me. Is the Tate Modern near here?</td>
<td>Thank you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, of course. Go straight on. Go the church, then turn at the traffic lights. And it's at the end of the street. You can't it!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sorry, could you say that again, please?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thank you.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c 3.67 Watch or listen and repeat the You Say phrases. Copy the rhythm.

d Practise the dialogue with a partner.

O Can you...? or Could you...?
Can you tell me the way to the Tate Modern?
Could you say that again, please?
We can use Can you...? Or Could you...? when we want to ask another person to do something.
Could you...? is more polite.

e In pairs, roleplay the dialogue. A ask for directions to building A (the library). Start with Excuse me, where's...? B give directions. Then swap roles. Ask for directions to building C (the post office).

4 JENNY AND ROB GO SIGHTSEEING

a 3.68 Watch or listen to Jenny and Rob. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
1. The Millennium Bridge is for cars and people.
2. It was the first new bridge over the Thames for 100 years.
3. Rob interviewed the engineer last year.
4. Jenny doesn't like Shakespeare.
5. Daniel phones and invites Jenny to dinner.
6. Jenny accepts the invitation.
7. There's a gift shop on the top floor of the Tate Modern.
8. The Tate Modern was a power station until 1981.

b Watch or listen again. Say why the F sentences are false.

c Look at the Social English phrases. Who says them: Jenny, Rob, or Daniel?

Social English phrases
What a view!
What would you like to visit?
What is there to see?
We could go to the Globe Theatre.
Would you like to meet for lunch?
That's really nice of you.
Maybe another time?
Yes, of course.

d 3.69 Watch or listen and check. Do you know what they are in your language?

e Watch or listen again and repeat the phrases.

Can you...?
- ask for and understand directions
- give simple directions
- ask someone to do something in a polite way
8A A murder story

1 READING

a Read the back cover of a murder story. Then cover it and look at the photographs. Can you remember who the people are?

Who's Amanda? She's Jeremy's wife.

b 4 Read and listen to the story. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false). Correct the F sentences.

1 Somebody killed Jeremy between 12.00 a.m. and 2.00.
2 The inspector questioned Amanda in the living room.
3 Jeremy went to bed before Amanda.
4 Amanda and Jeremy slept in the same room.
5 Somebody opened and closed Amanda's door.
6 Amanda got up at 7.00.
7 Amanda didn't love Jeremy.

c Look at the highlighted irregular verbs in the story. What are the infinitives?

1 was be

2 PRONUNCIATION

past simple verbs

a 4 Listen to the pronunciation of these verbs in the past simple.

thought could found heard read said saw took taught wore

b 4 Now match the verbs in a with a word below which rhymes. Listen and check. Practise saying the words.

book bed round four bird port good

Inspection Granger arrived at about 9.00. He was a tall man with a big black moustache. Amanda, Barbara, Claudia, and Gordon were in the living room. The inspector came in.

'Ve did it, he said. 'Somebody in this room killed him.' He looked at them one by one, but nobody spoke.

'Mrs Travers, I want to talk to you first. Come into the library with me, please.'

Amanda Travers followed the inspector into the library and they sat down.

'What did your husband do after dinner last night?'

'When we finished dinner, Jeremy said he was tired and he went to bed.'

'Did you go to bed then?'

'No, I didn't. I went for a walk in the garden.'

'What time did you go to bed?'

'About quarter to twelve.'

'Was your husband asleep?'
3 LISTENING

a 6, 7, 8) Listen to the inspector question Barbara. Write the information in the chart. Listen again and check. Then do the same for Gordon and Claudia.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Amanda</th>
<th>Barbara</th>
<th>Gordon</th>
<th>Claudia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What did they do after dinner?</td>
<td>She went for a walk.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What time did they go to bed?</td>
<td>11.45.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did they hear anything?</td>
<td>Jeremy's door opened and closed.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possible motive?</td>
<td>She hated him.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b Compare your chart with a partner. Who do you think was the murderer: Amanda, Barbara, Gordon, or Claudia? Why?

c 9) Now listen to what happened. Who was the murderer? Why did he/she kill Mr. Travers? Were you right?

4 GRAMMAR past simple: regular and irregular

a Cover the story and look at these verbs. Are they regular or irregular in the past simple? Write the past simple form □ and □ for each verb.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>come</th>
<th>kill</th>
<th>close</th>
<th>speak</th>
<th>sleep</th>
<th>sit</th>
<th>hate</th>
<th>walk</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>came</td>
<td>didn't come</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b 10) Listen and check.

c 138 Grammar Bank 8A. Learn more about past simple regular and irregular verbs and practice them.

d 165 Irregular verbs Tick (✔) the irregular verbs you know. Choose three new ones and learn them.

5 SPEAKING

Communication Police interview A p.104  B p.108. Interview robbery suspects. Are they telling the truth?
8B  A house with a history

1  VOCABULARY  the house
   a. Read the advertisement for a house to rent. Would you like to rent it? Why (not)?
   b. Cover the advertisement. What can you remember about the house?
   c. With a partner, think of three things you can usually find in a bedroom, a bathroom, and a living room.
   d. ➞ p.161 Vocabulary Bank The house.

2  LISTENING

   a. 4.13) Kim and Leo are a young couple from the USA. They want to rent the house in 1. Cover the dialogue and listen to their conversation with Barbara. Which three rooms in the house do they go into?

   b. Listen again and complete the dialogue.

   K  The garden is wonderful. I love it.
   L  Is there a 1 garage?
   B  Oh yes, there’s a big garage over there. Let’s go inside the house.

   This is the 2 . There are five rooms on this floor, the kitchen, the 3 , the living room, the 4 , the library...
   L  Wow! There’s a library, Kim!
   B  This is the living room.
   L  I love the furniture, the old sofa, the armchairs, the 5 ...
   B  And this is the 6 . It’s very big, as you can see.
   K  Is there a dishwasher?
   B  No, there isn’t. It’s an old house, you see.
   L  Never mind. I think it’s lovely. Is there a 7 downstairs?
   B  Yes, there’s one 8 and there are three upstairs.
   K  Are there any 9 with children?
   B  No, there aren’t any neighbours near here. But there are some families with children in the village.
   K  That’s great. You lived in this house, is that right, Mrs...?
   B  Call me Barbara, dear. Yes, I lived here. A long time ago.
   Now I live in the village. Let’s go 10 ...
d (4.15) Kim and Leo go to the local pub. Listen and answer the questions.

1. What do they have to drink? Why?
2. What does the barman tell them…?
   a. about what happened in the house
   b. about Barbara
   c. about what happened to the house later
3. What do Kim and Leo decide to do?

3 GRAMMAR there is / there are

a. In groups of three, practise the dialogue in 2b. Then complete the chart.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>There's a garden.</td>
<td>There ___ some families in the village.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There ___ a dishwasher.</td>
<td>There aren't any neighbours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>___ a garage?</td>
<td>___ any neighbours?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. What's the difference between…?

1. There are three families in the village.
2. There are some families in the village.

C ▶ p.138 Grammar Bank 8B. Learn more about there is / there are etc. and practise it.

4 PRONUNCIATION /əz/ and /ər/, sentence stress

a. 4.17 Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

- chair
- ear

b. Put the words in the right place.

beer careful dear wear here they're near stairs there we're hear where

C (4.18) Listen and repeat the words.

d (4.19) Listen and repeat. Copy the rhythm.

A Are there any stairs?
B Yes, they're over there.

A Is there a bank near here?
B Yes.
A Where?
B There's one in the square.

C Practise the dialogues with a partner.

f. Ask your partner questions with Is there a… in your…? Are there any… in your…? Give more information in your answers if you can.

- TV books plants pictures
- mirror fireplace lamps
- kitchen bedroom bathroom
dining room living room

Is there a TV in your kitchen? No, there isn't, but there's one in the living room.

5 SPEAKING

a. Look at the questionnaire Your home. Interview a partner. Ask for and give more information if you can.

Your home

- Do you live in a house or a flat?
- How old is it?
- How big is it?
- How many bedrooms are there?
- bathrooms?
- Is there a study?
a garden or a balcony?
a garage?
central heating or air conditioning?
- Do you like it? Why (not)?

b. Draw a simple plan of your living room. Show the plan to your partner and describe the room.

This is the living room. It's quite big and it's very light. There are two sofas and an armchair.

6 WRITING

▶ p.114 Writing Describing your home. Write a description of your house or flat.

7 (4.20) SONG House of the Rising Sun 🎵
1 READING

a Do you believe in ghosts? Are there buildings in your town/city that people think are haunted?

b Read the text once and find out:
1 Who are the ghosts in the two hotels?
2 Tick (√) the things that happen in the hotels:
   a [ ] people hear strange noises
   b [ ] people see somebody
   c [ ] doors open and close
   d [ ] lights go on and off
   e [ ] things fall on the floor
   f [ ] people feel that somebody is watching them

c Look at the highlighted words in the text related to hotels and guess their meaning.

d Would you like to stay in one of these hotels? Why (not)?

THERE ARE MANY HOTELS IN BRITAIN THAT PEOPLE SAY ARE HAUNTED. IF YOU ARE FEELING BRAVE, YOU CAN STAY THE NIGHT IN ONE OF THESE HOTELS.

ENGLAND GOSFORTH HALL INN

Gosforth Hall is a small hotel in Cumbria in the north of England, built in 1658. People say the hotel has the ghost of a Catholic priest. He usually appears in Room 11. There is a secret tunnel that goes from behind the fireplace in the hotel lounge to Room 11. In 17th-century England, Catholic priests used the tunnel to hide from Protestants.

The owner of the hotel, Rod Davies, says: 'I didn’t believe in ghosts before I came here, but strange things happen in the hotel. One guest woke up in the middle of the night and saw a tall man standing next to his bed. He checked out the next morning.' Rod’s wife says: ‘One night a lot of books fell off a shelf in the lounge. And sometimes when I am working I feel that someone is watching me, but when I turn round nobody is there.’

GHOST HUNTERS: Ask for Room 11 www.gosforthhallhotel.co.uk

SCOTLAND COMLONGON CASTLE

Comlongon is a 15th-century castle in a small village near Dumfries in south-west Scotland. The castle is haunted by the Green Lady, the ghost of Lady Marion Carruthers. Lady Marion was unhappy because she was married to a man she did not love, and in 1570 she jumped from the castle walls and killed herself. Many strange things happen in the hotel – doors open and close, and lights go on and off in empty rooms. An American couple once opened the door of their room and saw a young woman sitting on the bed. They left because they thought they were in the wrong room. In fact it was their room, but when they came back the room was empty.

GHOST HUNTERS: Ask for The Carruthers suite. www.comlongon.com
2 **VOCABULARY** prepositions: place and movement

a. Look at the pictures of the ghosts from the hotel. Where is the woman sitting? Where is the man standing?


3 **PRONUNCIATION** silent letters

Silent letters
Some English words have a 'silent' letter, e.g. in *cupboard* /'kʌbəd/ you don't pronounce the *p.*

a. 4.23 Listen and cross out the 'silent' letter in these words.

- building
- castle
- could
- friend
- ghost
- guest
- half
- hour
- know
- listen
- talk
- what
- write

b. Practise saying the words.

4 **LISTENING**

A British newspaper, the *Sunday Times*, sent one of its journalists, Stephen Bleach, to Gosforth Hall Inn. They asked him to spend the night in Room 11.

a. 4.24 Listen to part 1 of Stephen's night. Correct the information in these sentences.

1. He arrived at Gosforth Hall early in the evening.
2. There were four other guests in the hotel.
3. He talked to one of the guests.
4. He had dinner in the bar.
5. He went to his room at 11.00.
6. Room 11 was on the first floor.
7. The room was quite small.
8. There was a TV and a remote control.
9. There was a horror film on TV.
10. He went to sleep at the end of the film.

b. p.138 Grammar Bank 8C. Learn more about *there was / there were* and practise it.

5 **GRAMMAR**

*there was / there were*

a. 4.26 Complete the sentences from the listening with *was, wasn't, were, or weren't*. Then listen and check.

1. There ______ many other guests in the hotel.
2. There ______ only three.
3. There ______ an old TV on a table.
4. There ______ a remote control.

b. p.138 Grammar Bank 8C. Learn more about *there was / there were* and practise it.

6 **SPEAKING**

> Communication *The Ghost Room*

A p104 B p.109. Look at the picture of another haunted hotel room for one minute. Try to remember what there was in the room.
GRAMMAR

Circle a, b, or c.
1. The Bronté sisters ______ all writers.
   a. was  b. were  c. is
2. Where ______ Shakespeare born?
   a. was  b. were  c. is
3. ______ the tickets expensive?
   a. Was  b. Were  c. Did
4. I ______ a good film on TV last night.
   a. watched  b. watch  c. watches
5. They ______ at Stamford Bridge stadium.
   a. didn't arrived  b. don't arrived  c. didn't arrive
6. ______ you see the football match last night?
   a. Did  b. Do  c. Was
7. We ______ to Istanbul three years ago.
   a. go  b. were  c. went
8. When ______ in Los Angeles?
   a. you live  b. did you lived  c. did you live
9. I ______ you at the party last night.
   a. didn't saw  b. didn't see  c. don't saw
10. What time ______ home?
    a. did you get  b. you did get  c. you got
11. ______ a big table in the living room.
    a. There are  b. There is  c. It is
12. How many bedrooms ______?
    a. there are  b. are there  c. are they
13. There aren't ______ pictures on the walls.
    a. any  b. some  c. a
14. ______ only three guests in the dining room.
    a. There was  b. There were  c. There is
15. How many people ______ in the hotel?
    a. there were  b. was there  c. were there

VOCABULARY

a. Complete the professions with -er, -or, -ist, or -ian.
   1. act______  3. paint______  5. scient____
   2. art______  4. music____

b. Complete the phrases with have, go, or get.
   1. ______ a good time  4. ______ a taxi
   2. ______ an email  5. ______ a holiday
   3. ______ away for the weekend

c. Complete the sentences with back, by, in, out, or to.
   1. I went ______ with my friends on Saturday night.
   2. They went home ______ car.
   3. What time did you get ______ the restaurant?
   4. I was born ______ 1982.
   5. After lunch I went ______ to work.

d. Label the pictures.

1.  2.  3.  4.  5.

e. Write the prepositions.

1.  2.  3.  4.  5.

PRONUNCIATION

a. (Circle) the word with a different sound.

1. /d/  wanted  waited  lived  ended
2. /ɔ/  saw  wore  thought  could
3. /ə/  heard  met  said  left
4. /e/  near  there  wear  stairs
5. /ɔ/  hall  heating  hour  behind

b. Underline the stressed syllable.

1. musician  2. ago  3. yester day  4. between  5. fire place
Can you understand this text?

a. Read the text and mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
   1. Arthur Conan Doyle was Scottish, but he worked in England.
   2. He started writing stories about Sherlock Holmes at university.
   3. Conan Doyle lived at 221b Baker Street in London.
   4. In 1893 he didn't want to write more Sherlock Holmes stories.
   5. Sherlock Holmes didn't die in Austria.
   6. Sherlock Holmes is very popular today.

b. Look at the highlighted words or phrases in the text and guess their meaning.

The man who wrote SHERLOCK HOLMES

Arthur Conan Doyle was born in Edinburgh on 22nd May 1859. He studied medicine at Edinburgh University and as a student he began writing short stories. He became a doctor in the south of England, but at first he didn't have many patients. So in his free time he began writing stories about a brilliant detective, Sherlock Holmes. Conan Doyle based Holmes' personality on his professor at university. Holmes, who lives at 221b Baker Street in London, is famous for solving difficult crimes and mysteries using his great intelligence. The Sherlock Holmes stories soon became very popular, but in 1893 Conan Doyle became tired of his detective, and decided to 'kill' him. In The Final Problem Sherlock Holmes and his enemy, Professor Moriarty, die when they fall off the Reichenbach Falls in Switzerland. But people were very unhappy to lose Sherlock Holmes, and there were letters in many newspapers asking him to come back. Finally, in 1901 Conan Doyle brought him back in a new story, The Hound of the Baskervilles. He explained that Holmes did not die in the Reichenbach Falls, but miraculously survived. Conan Doyle died on 7th July 1930, but Sherlock Holmes continues to live both in the stories and in many film versions. Recently he was the inspiration for the character Dr Gregory House in the TV series House.

Can you understand these people?

4. In the street Watch or listen to five people and answer the questions.

Heba  Polly  Alison  Sarah Jane  Ben

1. Heba ________
   a. has family in New York
   b. lives in Egypt
   c. was born in Cairo

2. Polly went out for dinner on ________.
   a. Friday  b. Saturday  c. Sunday

3. Alison likes her kitchen because ________.
   a. it's really big
   b. she can eat there
   c. it's practical for cooking

4. Sarah Jane can see ________ from her study.
   a. a tree in her garden
   b. the sea
   c. her mother's house

5. Yesterday evening Ben ________.
   a. went out to the pub
   b. worked at home
   c. went to bed early

Can you say this in English?

Do the tasks with a partner. Tick (√) the box if you can do them.

Can you...

1. say three things about a famous (dead) person from your country
2. say five things you did last week, using past time expressions, e.g. last night, yesterday, (three) days ago, etc.
3. say where and when you were born
4. ask your partner five questions about yesterday

Short films Edinburgh Castle
Watch and enjoy a film on iTutor.
What I ate yesterday

Laura Bailey  model
Breakfast  I never miss breakfast! I had some cereal and fruit, and a piece of toast. I'm a bit unusual because I have tea and coffee in the morning. I don't mind in which order, but I need to have both.
Lunch  I was at my studio all day, so I got takeaway vegetarian sushi from a restaurant called Issu. I became a vegetarian 20 years ago and now I can't imagine living any other way.
Dinner  I picked up my children from school and we had a snack - cheese and biscuits. In the evening I went to my favourite pizzeria, and I had a vegetarian pasta dish, and two glasses of white wine.

James deGale  boxer
Breakfast  I woke up and went running for an hour and a half, then I came home and had a cup of tea and some porridge. Then I went to the gym and trained.
Lunch  I had a bowl of pasta with chorizo and bacon in tomato sauce with cheese on top, and an apple and an orange. I have an important fight soon, so my diet has to be very strict now. Three meals a day, and no snacks.
Dinner  I had a grilled chicken breast and vegetables - mushrooms, sweetcorn and tomatoes. My mum made it - she's a fantastic cook.

Lionel Shriver  writer
Breakfast  I had an enormous cup of espresso coffee with some milk and a little cream. It's all I need and gives me energy for the whole day.
Lunch  I don't eat lunch. I don't understand people who can eat three meals a day. How do they find the time to do anything else?
Dinner  First I had a glass of sherry and a bowl of popcorn. Then I had grilled fish with some brown rice and vegetables - peppers and onions. For dessert I had a piece of chocolate cake. I drank red wine.
3 **GRAMMAR** countable / uncountable nouns; a / an, some / any

a  Look at the photos. Complete the gaps with a, an, or some.
1 ________ strawberry
2 ________ tomato
3 ________ rice
4 ________ biscuits
5 ________ onion

b  ➤ p.140 Grammar Bank 9A. Learn more about countable / uncountable nouns, etc. and practise them.

c  Make sentences with there's a/an / some... and there are some... Choose food and drink from p.163 Vocabulary Bank Food.

4 **PRONUNCIATION** the letters ea

a  How is ea pronounced in these words? Put them in the correct column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bread</th>
<th>breakfast</th>
<th>eat</th>
<th>healthy</th>
<th>ice cream</th>
<th>meat</th>
<th>peas</th>
<th>steak</th>
<th>tea</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

b  (4:31) Listen and check. Practise saying them. Which is the most common pronunciation of ea?

5 **SPEAKING**

a  Make a food diary for yesterday. Write down what food and drink you had. Use Vocabulary Bank Food p.163 to help you.

**Breakfast** a cup of coffee, some cereal

b  Work in pairs. Tell each other what you had yesterday. Was it very similar or very different?

For breakfast I had a cup of coffee and some cereal.

6 **LISTENING**

a  What cookery programmes do you have on TV in your country? What do you think of them? Do you sometimes cook their recipes?

b  (4:32) Listen to part 1 of a TV cooking competition called Get ready! Cook! where contestants have to cook a starter, a main course, and a dessert. Answer the questions.

1. How many ingredients are there in the bag?
2. How long do the contestants have to cook their dishes?
3. Name three of the basic ingredients they can use.

c  (4:33) Listen to part 2. Complete the dishes that Jack and Liz make.

**Jack**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Judge's comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 _______ and _______ soup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 _______ breasts filled with cream _______</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 pancakes with _______ sauce</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Liz**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Judge's comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 carrot and _______ salad with _______ dressing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 _______ with creamy _______ sauce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 _______ and _______ mousse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

d  ➤ Communication Get ready! Cook! p.109 Look at the photos of their dishes. Whose dishes do you prefer?

e  (4:34) Listen to part 3. What does the judge say about Jack and Liz's dishes? Who wins?

f  In pairs, think of one of your favourite dishes. Write the ingredients you need. Tell your partner.
1 VOCABULARY  food containers
   a  (4:35) Match the words and pictures. Listen and check.
   b  (4:36) Listen and write five phrases.
   c  Make phrases with the containers and the words below.  a packet of biscuits
      biscuits chocolates Coke crisps juice jam milk salt sugar tuna

2 GRAMMAR
   quantifiers: how much / how many, a lot of, etc.
   a  Look at the pictures at the bottom of the page. Then ask and answer questions about the food.
      a lot quit a lot a little none
      How much sugar is there in dark chocolate? (I'm not sure. I think there's a lot.
   b  Communication  Sugar and salt p.109. Check your answers to a.
   c  Complete the sentences with a food or drink from a.
      1 There isn't any salt in _______.
      2 There's a little sugar in _______.
      3 There's quite a lot of salt in _______.
      4 There's a lot of sugar in _______.
   d  p.140 Grammar Bank 9B. Learn more about quantifiers and practise them.

3 PRONUNCIATION  /ʃ/ and /s/  
   a  (4:38) Listen and repeat the words and sounds.
      ʃ sugar fish  sl salt sweets
      shower snake
   b  (4:39) Put the words in the right column. Listen and check.
      cereal cinema delicious -fresh information centre rice crisps reception salad science shopping special sure
   c  (4:40) Listen and repeat the dialogue. Then practise it with a partner.
      A Are you sure this is salt? I think it's sugar.
      B No, I'm sure it's salt. I put some in the rice salad.
      A Let's taste the salad... Aargh, it was sugar. I told you.
      B Sorry!
4 SPEAKING

a Read the questionnaire and complete the questions with How much or How many.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>How much sugar and salt do you have a day?</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sugar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. ___ spoonfuls of sugar do you have in your tea or coffee?</td>
<td>a three or more  b two  c one  d none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. ___ cans of cola (or other fizzy drinks) do you drink a day?</td>
<td>a three or more  b two  c one  d none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. ___ fruit or fruit juice do you have a day?</td>
<td>a a lot  b quite a lot  c not much  d none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. ___ sweets or biscuits do you eat a week?</td>
<td>a a lot  b not many  c very few  d none</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Salt

5. How often do you add salt to your food at the table? | a always  b often  c sometimes  d never |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6. ___ takeaway food do you eat?</td>
<td>a a lot  b quite a lot  c not much  d none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. ___ bread do you eat a day?</td>
<td>a a lot  b quite a lot  c a little  d none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. ___ cheese do you eat a week?</td>
<td>a a lot  b quite a lot  c a little  d none</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b In pairs, interview your partner. Do you think he / she needs to eat less sugar and salt?

c Work in pairs. A say how much you eat / drink of the things below. B respond and ask for more information. Then say if you think A has a healthy diet or not. Swap roles.

- fish
- meat
- potatoes
- vegetables
- chocolate
- fast food
- eggs
- pasta
- olive oil
- butter

How often do you eat fish?

5 READING

a Read the magazine article White Gold. With a partner, complete the facts with sugar or salt.

b Read the article again, and highlight five new words or phrases. Compare with a partner.

c Did any of the facts surprise you?

6 SONG Sugar Sugar ♫
1 VOCABULARY high numbers.

a Read three questions from a radio quiz show. Choose the right answer for each question.

1 What is the approximate population of the UK?
   a 42,000,000
   b 52,000,000
   c 62,000,000

2 How many calories are there in a Big Mac?
   a 670
   b 485
   c 305

3 How far is it from New York City to Los Angeles?
   a about 4,000 km
   b about 2,500 km
   c about 5,000 km

b 4:42 Listen and check. How do you say the three answers?


d Look at the numbers below. Correct the mistakes.

175 a hundred seventy-five
2,150 two thousand and one hundred and fifty
3,009 three hundred and ninety
20,000 twenty thousands
3,000,000 three millions

e 4:44 Listen and write the ten numbers you hear.

f Answer the questions with a partner.
   1 What’s the population of your town/city?
   2 What’s the population of your country?
   3 How far is it from your town/city to...
      a London
      b New York

2 LISTENING

a (4:45) What quiz shows are popular in your country? Listen to the introduction to a quiz show called Quiz Night. Answer the questions.
   1 How long do the contestants have to say if the sentences are true or false?
   2 How much do they win if they get...
      a the first answer right  
      b the second answer right  
      c the third answer right  
      d all eight answers right  
   3 If they get an answer wrong, how much do they lose?
   4 What can a contestant do if they are not sure of the answer?

b In pairs, look at the sentences from Quiz Night. Write T (true) or F (false).

c (4:46) Listen to a contestant on Quiz Night. Check your answers to b. How much does she win?

d Listen again for why the answers are true or false. Write down any numbers you hear.

---

Quiz Night

1 The North Pole is colder than the South Pole.
2 Carrots are sweeter than tomatoes.
3 A proton is heavier than an electron.
4 The White House is bigger than Buckingham Palace.
5 Oranges are healthier than strawberries.
6 Female mosquitoes are more dangerous than male mosquitoes.
7 In judo a green belt is better than a blue belt.
8 Hepatitis A is worse than hepatitis B.
3 GRAMMAR comparative adjectives

a Look at the adjectives in the quiz sentences. In pairs, answer the questions.

Using adjectives to compare two things:
1 What two letters do you put at the end of one-syllable adjectives (e.g. cold)?
2 Why is big different?
3 What happens when an adjective ends in -y?
4 What word do you put in front of long adjectives (e.g. dangerous)?
5 What's the comparative form of good and bad?
6 What's the missing word?

China is bigger than Japan.

b ➤ p.140 Grammar Bank 9C. Learn more about comparative adjectives and practise them.

4 PRONUNCIATION /ə/, sentence stress

a (48) Listen to the eight quiz sentences from 2. How is than pronounced? How is -er pronounced at the end of a word?

b Listen again and repeat the sentences. Copy the rhythm.

5 SPEAKING


6 READING

a Read about two quiz shows. Do you have the same or similar shows in your country? Do you enjoy them?

b Now read about Pat Gibson. Why is he 'the best quiz contestant in the country'?

c Read the article again and complete it with a verb from the list in the past simple.

answer be become get have help know phone win

Q Who is the best quiz contestant in the country?

A Pat Gibson

Last night Pat Gibson had a big party after winning Mastermind on BBC TV. But it was not his first celebration party. Last April Mr Gibson beat £1 million in Who Wants to Be a Millionaire? and became the first person in Britain to win both quizzes.

In the Mastermind final Pat, a 43-year-old computer programmer who is obsessed with trivia, beat five other contestants, including a university lecturer. During the competition he asked questions on several specialist subjects, for example film director Quentin Tarantino and science fiction author Iain M Banks.

In Who Wants to Be a Millionaire? he got the final question and still had the possibility of phoning a friend for help. He was sure that he had the answer, but he was wrong. Mark Kerr, a friend, to double-check it. Mark was happy to help him – six weeks before, Pat had to win £250,000 on the same show as his phone-a-friend!
1 AN INVITATION TO DINNER

a 4:49 Watch or listen and mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
1 Jenny and Rob worked last night.
2 Jenny wants to read Rob's article.
3 It's Eddie's birthday today.
4 Rob and Daniel invite Jenny to dinner.
5 Jenny says yes to Rob.

b Watch or listen again. Say why the F sentences are false.

c 4:50 Read the information box. Listen and repeat B's phrases.

Respecting to what somebody says
1 A It's my birthday today. B Happy birthday!
2 A We won the cup! B Congratulations!
3 A I have my driving test tomorrow. B Good luck!
4 A I got all my English homework right. B Well done!
5 A I didn't get the job. B Oh dear! Never mind.

d 4:51 Listen and respond with phrases from the box.

I got two goals this afternoon. Well done!

2 VOCABULARY
understanding a menu

a Complete the menu with Main courses, Desserts, or Starters.

b 4:52 What do the highlighted words mean? How do you pronounce them? Listen and check.

c Cover the menu. In pairs, try to remember what's on the menu.

Luigi's

2 courses £15.00
3 courses £22.50

1 Onion soup
Mozzarella and tomato salad

2 Grilled chicken breast
with vegetables
Mushroom ravioli
Seafood risotto

3 Home-made vanilla ice cream with hot chocolate sauce
Fresh fruit salad
Tiramisu
3  ORDERING A MEAL

a  (4:53) Watch or listen to Jenny and Daniel having dinner. What food do they order?

b  Watch or listen again. Complete the You Hear phrases.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>You Hear</th>
<th>You Say</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Good evening. Do you have a _______?</td>
<td>Yes, a table for two.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My name's Daniel O'Connor.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Come this _____ please.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you ready to _______?</td>
<td>Yes. The soup and the mushroom ravioli, please.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I'd like the mozzarella salad and then the chicken, please.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What would you ______ to drink?</td>
<td>Just water for me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A bottle of mineral water, please.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>________ or sparkling?</td>
<td>Is sparkling OK?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Yes, sparkling.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thank you, sir.</td>
<td>Thank you.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c  (4:54) Watch or listen and repeat the You Say phrases. Copy the rhythm.

d  Practise the dialogue in groups of three.

e  In groups of three, roleplay the dialogue. A is the waiter. Start with Good evening. Do you have a reservation? B and C go to Luigi's. Then swap roles.

4  THE END OF THE MEAL

a  (4:55) Watch or listen and answer the questions.
1  How does Jenny normally celebrate her birthday?
2  Do they order dessert or coffee?
3  What does Daniel say to Jenny after the meal?
4  How does Jenny answer?
5  Does Barbara give Jenny good news or bad news?
6  Where does Jenny want to go after the meal?

b  Look at the Social English phrases. Who says them: Jenny, Daniel, the waiter, or Barbara?

Social English phrases
- Nothing special.
- Would you like a dessert?
- Not for me, thanks.
- A decaf espresso.
- The same for me, please.
- Go ahead.
- Good news?
- Could I have the bill, please?

6  Watch or listen and check. Do you know what they are in your language?

c  (4:56) Watch or listen again and repeat the phrases.

- Can you...?
  - use common phrases, e.g. Good luck, Congratulations, etc.
  - understand a menu
  - order a meal
10A The most dangerous road...

1 VOCABULARY places and buildings

a Complete these famous tourist sights with a word from the list. Do you know what countries / cities they are in?

Bridge  Castle  Mountains  Square  Street

1 Trafalgar  4 Edinburgh
2 The Golden Gate  5 The Rocky
3 Wall

b (5.2) Listen and check.

c ➢ p.164 Vocabulary Bank Places and buildings.

2 GRAMMAR superlative adjectives

a Look at the photos. Do you know what countries they are in?

b (5.4) With a partner, complete the captions with a phrase from the list. Listen and check.

the biggest  the busiest  the most dangerous
the longest  the most popular  the widest

c Complete the chart with superlatives from b.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>big</td>
<td>bigger</td>
<td>the biggest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long</td>
<td>longer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wide</td>
<td>wider</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>busy</td>
<td>busier</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dangerous</td>
<td>more dangerous</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>popular</td>
<td>more popular</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

d What letters do you add to a one-syllable adjective to make a superlative? What words do you put before longer adjectives?

e ➢ p.142 Grammar Bank 10A.
Learn more about superlative adjectives and practise them.
3 PRONUNCIATION consonant groups

a  
Listen and repeat the adjectives in 2c.

b  
Listen and repeat these superlatives.

the most expensive  the most exciting  the oldest
the most beautiful  the smallest

c  
Complete the questions with superlative adjectives.
Then ask and answer the questions with a partner.

4 READING

a  
Read the article below and look at the photo. Would you like to go cycling there? Why (not)?

b  
Read the article again. Then cover the text and answer the questions in pairs.
1 Where is the North Yungas Road?
2 Why is it called 'Death Road'?
3 How wide is the road?
4 Why is it popular with cyclists?
5 When is the most dangerous time of year to go?
6 Why is the road similar to London Bridge and the Sydney Opera House?
7 Why didn’t Marte enjoy cycling on the Yungas Road?

c  
In pairs, guess the meaning of the highlighted words.

d  
Is cycling popular in your country / region? Is there an area that is very popular for cyclists? Why?

5 SPEAKING & WRITING

a  
Work in pairs.

A Imagine you are a tourist in your town (or nearest big town) who only speaks English. Ask B, who lives in the town, questions 1–5. Get as much information as you can.

B You live in your town. A is a tourist who doesn’t speak your language. Answer his / her questions (1–5).
Then explain everything very clearly and give as much information as you can!
Then swap roles for questions 6–10.

A What’s the most beautiful square? (beautiful)
A What’s _______ way to get around? (easy)
A What’s _______ museum? (interesting)
A What’s _______ time of year to visit? (good)
A What’s _______ place to eat typical food? (nice)

B 6 What’s _______ building? (old)
B 7 What’s _______ place to go for a day trip? (nice)
B 8 What’s _______ area to walk at night? (dangerous)
B 9 Where’s _______ place to buy a souvenir? (good)
B 10 What’s _______ area to go at night? (popular)

b  
Imagine you want to advertise your town / city for tourists. Write an advert using superlative adjectives. Add photos if you can.
Come to Kielce. It isn’t the biggest or the most beautiful town in Poland, but it has the cleanest air and the most delicious cheesecake...

Cycling on the most dangerous road in the world

High in the Andes, the North Yungas Road goes from La Paz, the highest capital city in the world, to Coroico in the Yungas region of Bolivia. The road is only about three metres wide and the Coroico river lies 200 metres below. Bolivians call it 'El Camino de la Muerte' (Death Road) because of the number of accidents, and in 1995 it was officially declared 'the most dangerous road in the world.'

‘One mistake and you are dead.’

Since a new road opened in 2006, there are fewer buses and lorries on the old road. But now thousands of mountain bikers come from all over the world to have the most exciting ride of their lives. They start at La Cumbre, 4,700 metres above sea level, and go down to 1,525 metres, travelling at nearly 80 km an hour down the narrow road. During the rainy season, from December to March, only experienced cyclists can take part, but some die every year on the road. So, why do people do it?

Andrew Jago, 26, from Melbourne, said after finishing the ride, ‘If you go to London, you have to see London Bridge and if you go to Sydney, you have to see the Opera House and if you go to Bolivia, you have to do the most dangerous road.’

Marte Solberg, 22, from Norway said, ‘A lot of people said it was fun but I was scared of falling over and dying. I was worried because I had no experience of mountain biking. One mistake and you are dead. I asked myself a thousand times, “Why am I doing this?”'
1 LISTENING

a. Read the dictionary definition for couch, and look at the CouchSurfing website. What do you think CouchSurfing is?

**couch** noun
1. A long comfortable seat for two or more people to sit on (= a sofa)
2. The bed in a doctor's room for a patient to lie on

b. Listen to part of a radio travel programme. Were you right? How does CouchSurfing work?

c. Now listen to the speaker give more details about CouchSurfing. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).

1. CouchSurfers usually pay their host a little money.
2. You need to create a profile on the website.
3. When you find a person with a bed, you call them to agree the days you want to stay.
4. You have to offer other people a bed in your house or flat.
5. CouchSurfing is safe because you can read what other travellers say about the host.
6. The host always shows their guests their city.
7. You can CouchSurf all over the world.

d. Would you like to go CouchSurfing? Why (not)? Would you like to have a stranger to stay in your house? Why (not)?

2 GRAMMAR be going to (plans)

a. A British newspaper asked their travel journalist to try CouchSurfing. Cover the dialogue and listen to the interview. What are his plans?

b. Listen again and complete the gaps with a verb.

**Presenter**
Tell me about your plans, Philip.

**Journalist**
I'm going to _____ round Europe - to Paris, Vienna, and Budapest.

P. How long are you going to _____ in each city?
J. Just one night in each place.

P. Who are you going to _____ with?
J. In Paris I'm going to stay with a guy called Théo, in Vienna with a guy called Artur, in Budapest with a woman called Judit.

P. Are you going to _____ on a couch?
J. Only in Vienna, luckily. In the other places I have a bed.

P. How are you going to _____?
J. I'm going to _____ by train.

P. What are you going to _____ in each place?
J. I don't just want to see the typical tourist sights. I hope I'm going to _____ things that aren't in a guide book.

P. Well, have a good trip and good luck!

c. Look at the highlighted sentences in the dialogue. Then answer the questions.

1. What form is the verb after going to?
2. Do we use going to to talk about the past, the present, or the future?

d. p.142 Grammar Bank 10B. Learn more about be going to (plans) and practise it.

e. Number the future time expressions 1-8.

1. today
2. tomorrow night
3. next year
4. today
5. tomorrow morning
6. next week
7. tomorrow afternoon
8. next month

f. Listen and check. Then listen again and repeat. Make four true sentences about your plans.
3 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING
sentence stress

a (5.13) Listen and repeat the highlighted phrases in 2b. Copy the rhythm.
I'm going to travel round Europe.
Interview a partner about his / her plans.

4 READING

a Read the journalist's blog for his trip. Did he have a good time?
b Read the blog again and tick (✓) the things that were a problem.
1 He didn't arrive at the right time at one of the houses.
2 He couldn't understand the host's friends very well.
3 One host didn't have much time to show him the city.
4 One of the hosts didn't speak very good English.
5 He did something wrong in one of the flats.
6 He didn't like the food that one of the hosts cooked.
c Read the blog again and look at the highlighted verb phrases.
With a partner, say what you think they mean.

Paris: Théo
I met Théo at the Place D'Italie metro station. He's 24 and his English is good. At his apartment, I met his flatmate, Roger. They were very friendly. They made me a delicious dinner of crêpes and ham and eggs. Then they took me to Footiss, a great bar near the Opéra. Some friends came and in the end the conversation changed to French. That was difficult for me and I got tired. Finally, we went to a party near Montmartre. It was great! Lots of friendly people. I went back to Théo's flat on the back of his bicycle.

Vienna: Artur
I stayed with Artur, a biochemistry student. He was friendly, but when I arrived I wanted to have a bath and I forgot to turn off the tap. The bathroom was full of water. Oops!

Budapest: Judit
I got off the train at the wrong station so I arrived late at Judit's flat. She wasn't very happy. She's a journalist for the Hungarian channels MTV and TV2 and she's an incredibly busy woman. In the afternoon she took me with her to a shopping centre to help her choose a dress for a party. That was a bit surreal! In the evening we had dinner together in the Castro bar in the city centre. Next day I flew home to London, tired but happy. I'm definitely going to do it again!

5 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING

holidays

a Complete the holiday phrases using a verb from the list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>go</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>see</th>
<th>stay</th>
<th>show</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>___</td>
<td>___</td>
<td>___</td>
<td>___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>___</td>
<td>___</td>
<td>___</td>
<td>___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>___</td>
<td>___</td>
<td>___</td>
<td>___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>___</td>
<td>___</td>
<td>___</td>
<td>___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>___</td>
<td>___</td>
<td>___</td>
<td>___</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b In pairs, plan a holiday. You are going to visit three cities in the same continent. Your holiday can be a maximum of ten days.

Answer the questions:
• What cities are you going to visit?
• Where are you going to stay?
• How are you going to get there?
• How long are you going to stay in each city?
• What are you going to do in each place?

Making suggestions
Let's (go to...) I prefer to (go to...) Why don't we (go to...) That's a good idea.

We're going to go to South America - to Buenos Aires, Rio, and Montevideo. We're going to CouchSurf because we don't have much money...

d Do you prefer your new partner's plans? Would you like to change partners and go with him / her?

6 WRITING

➤ p.115 Writing A formal email. Make a reservation in a Bed and Breakfast.
10C What’s going to happen?

1 VOCABULARY verb phrases

a. Do people in your country go to fortune-tellers, or use fortune-telling sites on the internet? Do you believe in fortune-telling?

b. Match the fortune-teller’s cards and verb phrases.

   - become famous
   - get a new job
   - get married
   - meet somebody new
   - fall in love
   - get a lot of money
   - have a surprise
   - be lucky
   - travel
   - move house

2 READING & LISTENING

a. 5 (14) Read and listen to PART 1 of a story. In pairs, answer the questions.
   1. Who does Jane want to see?
   2. Who is going to tell her about her future? Why?
   3. Why couldn’t she see the man very well?

b. 5 (15) Listen to part 2.
   Then, with a partner, complete the information.
   1. Jane has a problem with her ______.
   2. She chooses _____ cards.
   3. Her first card means she’s going to be ______.
   4. Jane asks the fortune-teller if she’s going to ______ with her boyfriend.

c. 5 (16) Read and listen to PART 3. In pairs, answer the questions.
   1. What’s the second card? What does it mean?
   2. Why is this a problem for Jane?
   3. What’s her third card? What does it mean?
   4. Who’s Jim? Where did Jane meet him?
   5. What do you think the fourth card is going to be?

d. 5 (17) Listen to part 4. Then, with a partner, complete the information.
   1. Her fourth card means she is going to ______ her boyfriend and go away with Jim to ______.
   2. Very soon they are going to ______.
   3. Jane asks if she is going to be ______ and the fortune-teller says ______.
   4. She pays the fortune-teller ______

e. 5 (18) Read and listen to PART 5. In pairs, answer the questions.
   1. Who was the fortune-teller?
   2. Why did he pay Madame Yolanda £100?
   3. What’s the fifth card? What do you think is going to happen?
It's written in the cards

PART 1
'Come in,' said a voice. Jane Ross opened the door and went into a small room. There was a man sitting behind a table.
'Good afternoon,' said Jane.
'I want to see Madame Yolanda, the fortune-teller.'
'Madame Yolanda isn't here today,' said the man. 'But don't worry. I'm going to tell you about your future. What questions do you want to ask?' Jane looked at the fortune-teller. She couldn't see him very well because the room was very dark.

PART 3
He turned over the second card.
'Mm, a house. A new house. You're going to move, very soon, to another country.'
'But my boyfriend works here. He can't move to another country.'
'Let's look at the next card,' said the fortune-teller. He turned over the third card.
'A heart. You're going to fall in love.'
'Who with?' asked Jane.
'Let me concentrate. I can see a tall dark man. He's very attractive.'
'Oh, that's Jim,' said Jane.
'Who's Jim? Your boyfriend?'
'No. Jim's a man I met at a party last month. He's an actor, from New York. He says he's in love with me. It was his idea for me to come to Madame Yolanda.'
'Well, the card says that you're going to fall in love with him.'
'Are you sure?' asked Jane. 'But what about my boyfriend?'
'Let's look at the fourth card,' said the fortune-teller.

PART 5
The fortune-teller stood up. He turned on the light. At that moment an old woman came in. 'So, what happened?' she asked.
'It was perfect! She believed everything,' said Jim. 'I told you, I'm a very good actor. She was sure I was a fortune-teller.'
He gave the woman £100.
'That's Jane's £50 and another £50 from me. Thanks very much, Madame Yolanda. Bye.'
Madame Yolanda took the money. The fifth card was still on the table, face down. She turned it over. It was the plane. She looked at it for a minute and then she shouted:
'Wait, young man! Don't travel with that girl - her plane is going to...'
But the room was empty.

3 GRAMMAR be going to (predictions)
a Look at these two sentences. Which one is a plan?
Which one is a prediction?
1 She's going to be very lucky.
2 She's going to go on holiday next week.
b p.142 Grammar Bank 10C. Learn more about be going to (predictions) and practise it.
c Write four predictions, about the weather, sport, your town/country, and you. Use I think...going to...
I think it's going to snow tonight.
d Compare your predictions with a partner. Do you agree?

4 PRONUNCIATION the letters oo

The pronunciation of oo
oo can be pronounced /u/ (e.g. book /buk/) or /u:/ (e.g. spoon /spn/). Use your dictionary to check the pronunciation of new oo words.
Be careful, room can be pronounced /rʊm/ or /rʊm/.

a (5.20) Listen to the two sound words. Can you hear the difference in the vowel sound?

bull

boot

b (5.21) Listen and write the words in the right column.

afternoon book choose cook food good
look moon school soon spoon too took

c (5.22) Listen and check.

Good afternoon.
Look at the moon!
It's too soon!
Is the food good?

He's a good-looking cook.

5 SPEAKING
Roleplay fortune-telling.
A Look at the ten cards in 1. Secretly, number the cards 1–10 in a different order.
B Choose five numbers 1–10.
A Predict B's future using those cards.
B Ask for more information. Then change roles.

A I'm going to tell you about your future. Your first card is a star. You're going to become famous. You're going to be on TV... B Great! What programme?

6 (5.23) SONG Fortune Teller
GRAMMAR
(Circle) a, b, or c.
1. There's _____ milk in the fridge.
   a some  b any  c a
2. We don't need _____ bread.
   a no  b any  c a
3. How _____ fruit do you eat a day?
   a much  b a lot  c a lot
4. I drink _____ coffee.
   a much  b a lot  c a lot of
5. A How much salt do you eat?
   B _____.
   a A little  b A few  c Much
6. A Is there any sugar?
   B No, sorry, _____.
   a there isn't none  b there isn't any  c there isn't some
7. Tea is _____ coffee in this café.
   a cheaper that  b more cheap than  c cheaper than
8. Oranges are _____ than bananas.
   a more healthy  b healthier  c healthyer
9. My English is _____ than my brother's.
   a gooder  b better  c more good
10. This is _____ size that we have.
    a the biggest  b the most big  c the bigger
11. It's _____ restaurant in the city.
    a the baddest  b the worst  c the worse
12. What's _____ park in your town?
    a the most beautiful  b .most beautiful  c the more beautiful
13. _____ to buy my ticket this afternoon.
    a I go  b I going  c I'm going
14. _____ to get married?
    a Do they going  b They are going  c Are they going
15. I think _____ tomorrow.
    a it snows  b it's snowing  c it's going to snow

VOCAULRURY
a (Circle) the word that is different.
1. breakfast  lunch  dessert  dinner
2. strawberries  mushrooms  onions  peas
3. orange juice  sugar  milk  mineral water
4. crisps  chips  tomatoes  potatoes
5. fruit salad  ice cream  cake  chicken
b Match the food and the containers.
   beer  fruit juice  rice  tomatoes  honey
   1. a can of _____  3. a jar of _____  5. a carton of _____
   2. a tin of _____  4. a packet of _____
c (Circle) the right word or phrase.
1. It's a hundred twenty / a hundred and twenty miles from here.
2. The population is about three million / millions.
3. That new department shop / department store is great.
4. Let's have a drink at one of those cafés in the square / bridge.
5. Where is the main railway centre / station?
d Complete the phrases with these verbs.

PRONUNCIATION
a (Circle) the word with a different sound.
1. bread  peas  meat  tea
2. sugar  shopping  fish  sweets
3. cereal  carrots  salad  rice
4. chemist's  church  chips  cheese
5. food  cook  book  good
b Underline the stressed syllable.
1. chocolate  3. supermarket  5. dangerous
2. dessert  4. interesting
The British diet - STILL UNHEALTHY

Britain has a problem with obesity (more than 50% of the population are fat or overweight) and the government says we need to have a healthier diet. However, British shoppers are continuing to fill their supermarket baskets with unhealthy food.

A survey of 12 million consumers showed that 44% of people have the same unhealthy eating habits that they had four years ago. The survey also found that shoppers who normally have a very healthy diet start buying junk food, e.g. frozen pizzas, crisps, and cakes, if there is a crisis in their lives, for example divorce, moving house, or losing a job.

Another thing the survey showed is that there is not much difference in price between a healthy shopping basket and an unhealthy one. A typical healthy basket costs, on average, £71.78 compared with £71.18 for an unhealthy one. Martin Hayward, the director of the study said 'Many people don't eat healthily because they worry that healthy food is more expensive, but the survey shows that this is not true. We believe the reason why some people eat unhealthily is because they don't know how to cook so they buy ready-made meals.'
11A First impressions

1 READING

a Look at the photos of three cities.
Do you know what countries they are in?

Atlanta

Malmö

Valencia

b Read two blogs on a UK travel website, about people’s first impressions of two of these cities. Which two are they?

c Read the blogs again. Answer with the names of the cities.

Where...
1 do people eat a lot of salt and sugar
2 do TV programmes have subtitles
3 are the days very short in winter
4 do a lot of people have bad habits when they drive
5 is the city safer than the writer thought
6 are the houses colourfully painted
7 do you see men looking after young children
8 do people speak very slowly

Travel blogs

Moira in ________

The driving
I think people drive quite dangerously, which surprised me because I thought they were careful drivers here. They don’t drive fast, but people are always on the phone in the car, which you don’t often see in the UK nowadays.

The food
The food can be delicious, but I think people eat very unhealthily. In restaurants they often add salt to their food. And they drink litres of Coke! The headquarters of the Coca-Cola company is based here, and they even have a Coca-Cola museum. Once I went to a coffee shop and asked for a double espresso, no milk no sugar. I had to repeat my order three times, because the waitress couldn’t understand me. She said people here only ask for lattes and cappuccinos with lots of sugar!

The people
In general, people are very friendly. The people I’m staying with, who live just outside the city, know all their neighbours really well. They often don’t lock their doors, which surprised me because people say it’s a dangerous city. They speak incredibly slowly, with a strong accent and sometimes I have a problem understanding them.

Mark in ________

The weather
It’s December – and it gets dark at about 3 p.m., which is depressing! There’s a lot of snow at the moment, but all the buses and trains are running perfectly, not like in Britain where everything stops when it snows!

The houses
All the houses are painted in pretty colours, like red, green and blue, and many houses have a yellow and blue flag. Inside the houses are decorated beautifully with lots of flowers and modern wooden furniture.

The people
People are friendly and polite, but quite formal. They dress fashionably but casually, and of course you see a lot of very blonde women here. You also see a lot of men who are looking after very young babies. Everybody speaks English really well, maybe because a lot of the TV is in English with subtitles.
d Find words in the blogs which mean:

**Moira**
Para 1 _______ adv at this time
Para 2 _______ noun the office where the leaders of an organization work
Para 3 _______ verb close with a key

**Mark**
Para 4 _______ adj sth making you feel sad
Para 5 _______ adj made from a tree
Para 6 _______ adv not in a formal way

e Which of the two cities would you prefer to live in? Why?

---

**2 GRAMMAR adverbs**

a Look at the highlighted adverbs in the blogs. Answer the questions.
1. What two letters are added to an adjective to make an adverb?
2. Which adverb is the same word as the adjective?
3. Which is the adverb from *good*?
4. Which four adverbs are describing other adverbs?

b Now look at the highlighted adverbs again in Moira's first paragraph. Complete the rules with *before* or *after*.
1. Some adverbs describe how people do things.
   They go _______ the verb or verb phrase.
2. Some adverbs describe another adverb (or adjective).
   They go _______ the adverb (or adjective).

c ➤ p.144 Grammar Bank 11A. Learn more about adverbs and practise them.

d ➤ 5.27 Listen and say what is happening. Use an adverb.

---

**3 PRONUNCIATION word stress**

a Underline the stressed syllable in the adjectives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjectives</th>
<th>Adverbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dangerous</td>
<td>dangerously</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polite</td>
<td>politely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beautiful</td>
<td>beautifully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incredible</td>
<td>incredibly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>careful</td>
<td>carefully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fashionably</td>
<td>fashionably</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>casual</td>
<td>casually</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perfectly</td>
<td>perfectly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unhealthy</td>
<td>unhealthily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b ➤ 5.28 Listen and check. Repeat the adjectives.

c ➤ 5.29 Now listen and repeat the adverbs. Does the stress change?

---

**4 LISTENING & SPEAKING**

a 5.30 Listen to Jemma talking about the third city. In general, is she positive, negative, or neutral about it?

b Listen again. Then, with a partner, complete Jemma's sentences.

---

**Eating out**

People spend a lot of time in 1 _______ and 2 _______.

People who 3 _______ go out to a bar to have 4 _______. They don't have it in their 5 _______.

When people go out in big groups, 6 _______ all sit at one end of the table and 7 _______ at the other.

**The women**

Women here talk very 8 _______ and very 9 _______.

Women dress _______.

**Work**

There's a myth that the Spanish don't 10 _______, but I don't think it's 11 _______.

People have a 12 _______ lunch break, but they finish work very 13 _______.

---

**c Answer the questions in small groups.**

1. In your country or city how do people...?
   - dress for special occasions
   - treat tourists
   - drive
   - eat at lunchtime during the week
   - speak foreign languages
   - behave at sports matches
   - decorate their houses

2. Think of a time when you went to another country or another city / region in your country for the first time. What did you notice about...?
   - the people
   - the food
   - the driving
   - the houses
   - the weather

---

**5 WRITING**

Choose two headings from the blogs in 1 or the listening in 4. Write two paragraphs, either about your country or a country you have visited.
1 READING & SPEAKING
a Read about the website 43things.com. How does it work?

43Things is a website where people write things that they want to do. There are always 43 different ambitions. Some are trivial, some are more serious. Other people respond and write about their experiences and sometimes give advice.

b Read today’s 43 things and responses A–E. Match the responses with five things people want to do. Do you think their advice is good?

c Complete the phrases from the text with a verb from the list.

become  bite  choose  climb  download  go  learn  spend  visit

1 ___ a mountain
2 ___ on a safari
3 ___ to cook
4 ___ less time on the internet
5 ___ the lyrics
6 ___ five things you really like eating
7 ___ a Goth
8 ___ all the continents
9 ___ my nails

d Cover the verbs and try to remember them.

2 GRAMMAR verbs + to + infinitive
a Look at the highlighted verbs in the text. What’s the form of the next verb? Which one is different?

b p.144 Grammar Bank 11B. Learn more about verbs + to + infinitive and practise them.

On 43Things today, people want to...

climb Mount Kilimanjaro  get up earlier  go on a safari
get a new job  have very long hair  have more time for myself
learn to cook  learn to dance like Shakira  make a short film
visit all the continents  spend less time on the internet  write a novel
read 12 books a month  run a half marathon  see Radiohead live
learn to speak Italian  stop biting my nails  get married
go to Iceland  write a song  become a Goth
paint my kitchen  spend less money on clothes  stop eating meat
stay awake for 24 hours

A  Spend less time on Facebook, for example only two hours at the weekend. Stop using Second Life if you use it. (I uninstalled it).

B  Get a Laura Pausini CD. Download the lyrics to a song and translate them — you can use Google Translate for this. Listen carefully to the pronunciation, and then sing along with her. (I sang “Incancellabile”).

C  You just need to stop cutting it! Don’t worry about the latest fashions. Go for it!

D  Choose five things you really like eating (e.g. roast chicken and chocolate cake) and then look at recipes on the internet. Choose the recipes that you’d like to try, preferably ones that aren’t too difficult. Make the five things again and again until they’re perfect. It isn’t difficult, you just need to practise.

E  Wear black clothes. Be yourself, and listen to bands like The Cult and The Mission.

Second Life® a website which is a free 3D virtual world where users can socialize, create new personalities, and interact with other users
Laura Pausini an Italian pop singer, popular in several European and Latin American countries
3 PRONUNCIATION sentence stress
a {5.32} Listen and repeat the dialogue. Copy the rhythm. How do you pronounce to?
   A Would you like to go to Iceland?
   B No, I wouldn't.
   A Why not?
   B Because I don't like the cold.

b {5.33} Listen to another dialogue. Complete the missing stressed words.
   A ______ you ______ to ______ a ________ ?
   B ______, I'd ______ to.
   A ________ ?
   B Because I ______ my ________ . It's ________ .

c Practise the dialogues with a partner.

d In pairs, choose ten ambitions from What do you want to do with your life? Ask your partner questions using Would you like to...?

Would you like to climb Mount Kilimanjaro?
Yes, I would. / No, I wouldn't.

4 SPEAKING
Work in pairs. Take turns.
   A Tell your partner about the things below.
   B Respond to what A says. Ask questions.
   A Ask What about you?

- a country you want to go to
- something you would like to learn to do
- something you need to do tomorrow
- a holiday you are planning to have soon
- a famous person you hope to meet one day
- a film you want to see soon
- a dangerous sport you would like to try
- something you need to buy soon
- a singer or group you hope to see one day

I really want to go to Australia. / Oh, yes? Why Australia?

5 WRITING
a Create a class page for 43 Things. Write three things you really want to do! Your teacher will write some of them on the board.

b Read other students' ambitions and choose one that you know something about. Write a response (like the ones in 43 Things) to give advice or talk about your experience.

6 {5.34} SONG Don't Tell Me that it's Over
1a. Do you ever visit any of the websites on this page, or websites like them? How much time do you spend a day on the internet? Do you use it mainly for your work/studies or for pleasure?

1b. Look at some words and phrases related to the internet. Match them with their definitions.

attachment download google log in online search for skype social network upload wifi

1c. Listen and check. Repeat the words. Underline the stressed syllable in the multisyllable words.
2 SPEAKING & LISTENING

a With a partner, look at some things which people do on the internet. For each one say if you do it often, sometimes, hardly ever, or never.

I often send emails for work. What about you?

b Now go through the list again and write M if you think men do them more than women, W if you think women do them more than men, and ND if you think there is no difference.

c (5 36) Listen to an interview with a UK marketing expert about how men and women use the internet. Check your answers.

d Do you think the situation is the same in your country?

3 GRAMMAR articles

a Complete the email with a, an, the, or – (no article).

Sent: Friday, 8 July 18:13
To: Carola Whitney
Subject: Re: Hello!

Hi Carola

Thanks for your email. I would really like to write to you and practise my English.

I'm ______ student at Buenos Aires University - it's ______ biggest university in Argentina. I'm studying ______ medicine. I live in Buenos Aires with my grandmother, ______ my mother's mother, because my family live in ______ small town quite far away, but I go ______ home at ______ weekend.

I love listening to ______ classical music, and ______ last week I went to ______ amazing concert at ______ Opera House here.

b ➤ p.144 Grammar Bank 11C. Learn more about articles and practice them.

c Work in pairs. A choose a circle, think of three things, three places, etc. and tell B. B respond and ask for more information. Then change roles.

I love fish, strawberries, and chocolate cake. I don't like tomatoes. Why not?

- kinds of food you love (and one you don't like)
- things you always have in your bag or pocket
- things you sometimes do on Saturday evening
- things women usually like doing (but men don't)
- things you do first thing in the morning
- things you did last night
- jobs you would like to do (and one you wouldn't)
- things men usually like doing (but women don't)
1 JENNY'S LAST MORNING

a (5:38) Watch or listen and mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
1 Rob arrives late.
2 He has a coffee with Jenny.
3 Jenny has good news for him.
4 The job offer is for a year.
5 Rob thinks A writer in New York is a good name for the column.
6 Rob needs time to think.

b Watch or listen again. Say why the F sentences are false.

2 VOCABULARY public transport
a Match the words and pictures.
- bus [1]
- plane [2]
- taxi [3]
- train [4]
- coach [5]
- tram [6]

b (5:39) Listen and check.

c Complete the headings with a word from a.

1 You get one at a ~ rank.
They are also called cabs.
People usually give the driver a tip (= some extra money, about 5-10%).
In London they are black.

2 You get one at an airport.
First you have to check in.
Then you go through security to the Departure lounge.
Finally you go to your Gate.

3 You get one at a station.
You normally need to get a ticket first.
Then you need to find the right platform.
Some go underground in big cities. In London, this is called The Tube.

4 You get one at a ~ station or a ~ stop.
Intercity ones are also called coaches.
You can buy a ticket in advance or sometimes you can pay the driver.
In London they are red.

d Cover the columns and look at the headings. Try to remember the four facts about each type of public transport.
3 ▶ GETTING TO THE AIRPORT

a (5:40) Watch or listen to Jenny’s three conversations. How does she get to the airport?

b Watch or listen again. Complete the You Hear phrases.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>You Say</th>
<th>You Hear</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Could you call me a taxi, please?</td>
<td>Yes, of course. ______ to?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Paddington station.</td>
<td>And when would you like it ______?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Now, please.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How much is it?</td>
<td>That’s £ ______, please.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Make it £15. And could I have a receipt?</td>
<td>Thank you very much, ______.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Could I have a ticket to Heathrow Airport, please?</td>
<td>Single or ______?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Single, please. Standard or ______ class?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Standard, please. That’s £18.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can I pay by credit card?</td>
<td>Yes, of ______.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c (5:41) Watch or listen and repeat the You Say phrases. Copy the rhythm.

d Practise the dialogue with a partner.

e ▶ In pairs, roleplay the dialogue. Then swap roles.

A (book open) You are the receptionist, the taxi driver, and the ticket clerk. The taxi costs £11.60. The ticket costs £18.90.

B (book closed) You want to get a taxi to Victoria Station, and then a train to Gatwick Airport. Begin with Could you call me a taxi, please?

4 ▶ SAYING GOODBYE

a (5:42) Watch or listen and answer the questions.

1 What does Jenny leave in the hotel?
2 How does she get it back?
3 What has Rob decided to do?
4 Is Eddie going to meet her at the airport? Why (not)?
5 Who is Eddie? How old is he?

b Look at the Social English phrases. Who says them: Jenny or Rob?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Social English phrases</th>
<th>Jenny</th>
<th>Rob</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I can’t believe it!</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thank you so much.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’d love to [accept].</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m so happy.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have a good journey.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See you in [New York].</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c (5:43) Watch or listen and check. How do you say them in your language?

d Watch or listen again and repeat the phrases.

Can you...?

- ask for a taxi
- buy a ticket on public transport
- use common phrases, e.g. Have a good journey, See you in New York, etc.
1 **GRAMMAR** present perfect

a Look at some images from films. What do the films have in common?

b **5:44** Listen to Alan and Lucy talking on the phone. What two things are they going to do tonight?

c Listen again and read the conversation. Complete the chart below and answer the questions with a partner.

| Alan | Hi, Lucy. Have you finished your report? |
| Lucy | Yes, I have, finally! |
| Alan | What do you want to do tonight? Do you want to go out? |
| Lucy | No, I'm a bit tired. |
| Alan | Would you like to come here? I can order pizzas and we can watch a film. |
| Lucy | Good idea. What films do you have? |
| Alan | How about Eclipse? Have you seen it? |
| Lucy | No, I haven't seen it, but I've read the book. |
| Alan | Is it good? |
| Lucy | I loved it! Vampires – perfect for a winter night! |
| Alan | Great. What pizza topping do you want? |
| Lucy | Cheese and blood, please...no, cheese and tomato. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I've seen the film.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I_________________ the film.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>?________ you________ the film?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 What is 've? What verb is seen from?
2 Change the three sentences in the chart to third person singular (He or She).
3 Lucy says I've read the book. Do we know when she read it?

d **p.146 Grammar Bank 12A.** Learn more about the present perfect and practise it.

e Look at the films in a and talk to a partner. Which of the films have you seen? Have you read any of the books?

I've seen Eclipse, but I haven't read the book.

I haven't seen the film of Alice in Wonderland, but I've read the book.
2 PRONUNCIATION  sentence stress
  a  
  
  a)  (5:46) Listen and repeat the dialogue. Copy the rhythm.
    A Have you seen The Hobbit?
    B No, I haven't.
    A Have you read the book?
    B Yes, I have. I've read it twice.

  b  Write down the names of three more films from books. Ask and answer with a partner.

    Have you seen...?
    Have you read the book?
    Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.

3 VOCABULARY  
  irregular past participles
  a  Look at some irregular past participles. Which verbs do you think they are from? Write the infinitive and the past simple.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>past simple</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>be</td>
<td>was/ were</td>
<td>been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>eaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fallen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>forgotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>gone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>spoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>worn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

d  Complete the Verb column with a past participle from a.

  1 Have you seen your homework?
  2 I'm sorry, I've read your name.
  3 Have you ever had a photo of an actor?
  4 Ann's on holiday. She's going to be away for three weeks.
  5 Have you to Mike about the party?
  6 I've never been that jacket. It was a big mistake.
  7 Jim's in love with an Italian girl.
  8 Oh no! I've worn my glasses.

e  Cover the Verb column. Can you remember the sentences?

4 SPEAKING & LISTENING
  a  Complete the phrases with the past participle of the verb in brackets.

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>asleep</td>
<td>watching a film</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(fall)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>the soundtrack of a film</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(buy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td>the cinema before the end of a film</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(leave)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td>a film more than three times</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(see)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td>in a film</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(cry)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td>a film in English with subtitles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(see)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td>in a film</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(appear)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b  Stand up and move around the class. Ask Have you ever...? questions with 1–7. When somebody answers Yes, I have, write down their name and ask What film was it?

c  (5:49) Listen to three people answering one of the questions from a. Which question is it?

d  Listen again. Complete the chart for each person.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Which film?</th>
<th>How many?</th>
<th>Why?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 (5:50) SONG Flashdance 🎵
1 LISTENING
a. Are you following a TV series at the moment? Which one? Why do you like it?
b. Look at the information about an episode from an American TV series. Listen to part of the episode. Then answer questions 1 and 2.

Episode 5
Jess's birthday is on Friday and Matt wants to take her somewhere special...

1. Which restaurants has Jess eaten in before? Tick (✓) or cross (✗) the boxes.
   - The Peking Duck
   - Appetito
   - Luigi's
2. Do they agree which restaurant to go to?

Listen again and answer the questions.
1. When did Jess go to The Peking Duck and who with?
2. How many times has she been to Appetito?
3. What did Matt say happened when they went to Luigi's?
4. Why is Jess angry?
5. Who does Jess think Matt went with to Luigi's?
6. What does Matt say? Do you believe him?

2 GRAMMAR
present perfect or past simple?
a. Look at part of the conversation between Matt and Jess. In pairs, answer the questions.

Matt: Have you been to The Peking Duck?
Jess: Yes, I have.
Matt: Oh no! When did you go there?
Jess: Last month. I went with the people from work.

1. What tense is Matt’s first question?
2. What tense is Matt’s second question?
3. Which of the two questions is about a specific time in the past?

b. p.146 Grammar Bank 12B. Learn more about the present perfect and past simple and practise them.

c. Play Guess where I’ve been.

Guess where I’ve been
1. Write down the names of six cities in your country or abroad (three you have been to and three you haven't been to).
2. Swap lists with your partner. Tick (✓) the three cities you think your partner has been to, but don’t tell him/her.
3. Ask Have you been to...? for each place to check your guesses. Did you guess right?

   Have you been to Oxford?
   When did you go to...
   Did you like it?
   How many times...?"
3 VOCABULARY & PRONUNCIATION
more irregular past participles

a Look at some more irregular past participles. Write the infinitive and the past simple.

1 _buy_ _bought_ bought
2 _______ drunk
3 _______ found
4 _______ given
5 _______ heard
6 _______ had
7 _______ known
8 _______ lost
9 _______ made
10 _______ met
11 _______ paid
12 _______ sent
13 _______ spent
14 _______ thought
15 _______ won

b (5.54) Listen and check.

c ➤p.165 Irregular verbs Tick (✓) all the ones you know. Try to learn the new ones.

d (5.55) Put three irregular past participles in each column. Listen and check.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present perfect</th>
<th>Past simple</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bought broken done driven drunk</td>
<td>forgotten given gone known lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>made paid spoken sung taken thought worn written</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In your life...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present perfect</th>
<th>Past simple</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5 / ever be on TV?</td>
<td>What programme / it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 / ever lose your mobile?</td>
<td>Where / lose it? / find it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 / ever win a cup or medal?</td>
<td>What / win it for?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 / ever speak to a famous person?</td>
<td>Who / it? What / say?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b Work in pairs. A ask B the questions. If B answers Yes, I have, ask the past simple questions too. Then change roles.
1 READING

a) Read the information about Sir Ian McKellen. Have you seen any of his films? Did you like them?

Sir Ian McKellen is one of Britain's greatest actors. He was born in Burnley in the north of England on 25 May 1939. He first became well known as an actor for his roles in Shakespeare's plays, e.g. *Hamlet* and *Macbeth*. In recent years he has had many important film roles including James Whale in *Gods and Monsters*, Gandalf in *The Lord of the Rings* trilogy, and Magneto in *X-Men*.

b) Sir Ian McKellen agreed to be interviewed especially for *English File*. Read the interview and write a heading from the list below in each section.

YOUR ABILITIES
YOUR WORK EXPERIENCES
YOUR HOME
YOUR LIFESTYLE
YOUR PLACES
YOUR TASTES

c) Read the interview again. Then mark the sentences T (true) or F (false). Say why the F ones are false.

1. He became an actor when he was a student.
2. He lives outside London.
3. He gets up early every day.
4. He's never been to India.
5. He spends a long time on the internet every day.
6. He read *The Lord of the Rings* when he was young.
7. His desk isn't very tidy.
8. He doesn't like animals.
9. He relaxes by playing games.
10. He doesn't have any ambitions.

INTERVIEW WITH
SIR IAN MCKELLEN

1 YOUR TASTES

What kind of music do you like?
I hardly ever listen to music at home – I prefer going to concerts. I enjoy classical music and pop, but my favourite kind of music is traditional American jazz.

What book are you reading at the moment?
I'm reading *The Hammersteins*, a biography of the American theatre family written by Oscar Andrew Hammerstein.

Who's your favourite historical character?
Perhaps William Shakespeare.

2

What time do you usually get up in the morning?
If I am working, I get up one hour before I have to leave the house. If I am not working, and I went to bed late the night before, I get up at about 10 in the morning.

How much time do you spend a day on the internet?
I can very easily spend three or four hours on the internet, answering emails, reading the news, etc. I think of the internet as a wonderful encyclopaedia of information.

How do you relax?
I enjoy a late night sudoku, but especially being with friends.

3

What’s your favourite room in the house?
Perhaps the living room where I cook and eat, and from where I can see the River Thames in London.

What do you always have on your desk?
I always have too many letters, papers, and books which are waiting for me to read.

Do you have any pets?
I love dogs, but I can't have one because I'm often away from home.
2 VOCABULARY revision: word groups

a Put these words from the interview in the right column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>actor</th>
<th>books</th>
<th>desk</th>
<th>go to bed</th>
<th>living room</th>
<th>small</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Rooms | Things | Jobs

| Furniture | Adjectives | Daily routine |

b With a partner, add three more words to each column.

3 PRONUNCIATION revision: sounds

a Look at some words from the interview. Which word has a different sound?

1. school
2. first
3. say
4. friends
5. enjoy
6. hour
7. thing
8. information

b Listen and check. Practise saying the words.

4 GRAMMAR & SPEAKING revision: question formation

a Without looking back at the interview, try to remember the questions for these answers.

1. Perhaps William Shakespeare.
2. I'm going to go to India for the first time in February.
3. I only speak English...
4. I can't choose between Edinburgh, Prague, and Venice.
5. I read it first when I was preparing to play Gandalf...

b Choose eight questions from the questionnaire to ask a partner.
**GRAMMAR**

Circle a, b, or c.

1. You speak _____.
   a. very slow
   b. very slowly
   c. very slower

2. She plays tennis _____.
   a. quite well
   b. quite good
   c. quite good

3. My husband works _____.
   a. incredible hard
   b. incredibly hard
   c. incredibly hardly

4. I'd like ____ a Ferrari.
   a. drive
   b. to drive
   c. driving

5. What do we need ____ next?
   a. to do
   b. do
   c. doing

6. She wants to pass her exams, but she doesn't like _____.
   a. study
   b. studying
   c. study

7. ____ usually drive fast in this country.
   a. The men
   b. Men
   c. The man

8. I saw ____ good film last night.
   a. the
   b. a
   c. -

9. It's ____ best place to eat in the city centre.
   a. the
   b. a
   c. -

10. Do you go to ____ bed late at weekends?
    a. the
    b. a
    c. -

11. I've read the book, but I ____ the film.
    a. don't see
    b. haven't saw
    c. haven't seen

12. A. Have you ____ anyone famous?
    B. Yes, I have. A famous film actor.
    a. ever met
    b. ever meet
    c. met ever

13. ____ he been to New York?
    a. Has
    b. Did
    c. Have

14. We ____ to Italy last year.
    a. have gone
    b. have been
    c. went

15. She ____ in a restaurant before.
    a. did never worked
    b. have never worked
    c. has never worked

**VOCABULARY**

a. Write the opposite adjective or adverb.

1. quickly ____  3. well ____  5. formal ____
2. safe ____  4. noisy ____  6. healthily ____

b. Complete the sentences with these verbs.

need learn promise want

1. I'd like to ____ to dance the tango.
2. You don't ____ to wash it. You've only worn it once.
3. I can't ____ to be on time. It depends on the traffic.
4. Do you ____ to go to a restaurant or to a pub for lunch?

VOCABULARY (cont.)

Vocabulary

attachment wifi download online website

1. I do a lot of shopping ____ these days.
2. I can ____ the song for you tonight.
3. You can find all the information on the hotel's ____.
4. Don't open an ____ when you don't know who it's from.
5. We have ____ at home so I can send emails from my bedroom.

D. Complete the sentences with for, in, with, or up.

1. Log ____ with your username and password.
3. You can search ____ all kinds of information on the internet.
4. Have you ever seen a film ____ subtitles?

E. Write the past participle of the following verbs.

1. see saw ____ 3. know knew ____ 5. fall fell ___
2. go went ____ 4. give gave ____ β. take took ___

**PRONUNCIATION**

a. Circle the word with a different sound.

1. done sung gone won
2. said been any left
3. want had what watch
4. choose soon food book
5. worst wore prefers search

b. Underline the stressed syllable.

1. politely 2. dangerously 3. decide 4. attachment 5. website
Amy Johnson is an American who lives and works in England. We asked her to tell us about her first impressions of the UK.

One of my first impressions was that the UK is more expensive than the US. I live in Oxford and the cost of living (rent, bills, food, etc.) is higher than in Ohio, where I'm from in the US. The only thing that is a lot cheaper here is healthcare – it's free to go to the doctor's or to hospital, whereas in the US it isn't, so you need to have health insurance, which can be very expensive.

I think you can eat very well in England – there's a wide variety of food from all around the world – Chinese, Japanese, Italian, Turkish, etc. – but eating out is more expensive than in the US, and the service is worse.

Generally, I'd say British food is healthier than American food, and the portions are a lot smaller, too.

As for the people, I find British people quite pessimistic compared to Americans who are usually very positive and optimistic about the future. Also, when I'm in Ohio I talk to everybody: shop assistants, the person behind me in the supermarket queue, the person sitting next to me in the restaurant, but I can't do that in the UK – people are much more reserved. But, on the other hand, I think it is easier to make real friends here than in the US. I also find British people are not very good at telling you what they really think or (in a work situation) saying something negative about you. Americans just say things as they are!
**1B WHERE ARE THEY FROM?**

**Student A**

a  Ask B the questions about person 1.
   - Where’s Masako from?
   - Where in (country)?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>From</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masako</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carlo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Petra</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b  Answer B’s questions about person 6.

c  Repeat for the other people.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>From</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ali</td>
<td>Turkey (Ankara)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antonia</td>
<td>Mexico (Acapulco)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oliver</td>
<td>Germany (Berlin)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**1C WHAT’S HIS / HER REAL NAME?** **Student A**

a  Look at the names of your four people. Two are their real names and two aren’t. Cross (X) the names you think are not their real names.

- Tom Hanks, actor
- Bono, singer
- Angelina Jolie, actress
- Katy Perry, singer

b  Check your answers. Tell B I think ____ is / isn’t his / her real name. If B says No, it isn’t, ask B What’s his / her real name? How do you spell it? and write the name under the photo.

c  Answer B’s questions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>From</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jude Law, actor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tina Turner, singer x</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eminem, singer x</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scarlett Johansson, actress</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

✔ real name
Anna Mae Bullock
Marshall Mathers
✔ real name

**2A WHAT’S ON THE TABLE?**

**Students A+B**

a  Look at the picture for one minute. Try to remember the things on the table.

b  Close your books and write down the ten things on the table.

c  Now compare with your partner. Did he / she remember more things than you?
2C WHAT’S THE MATTER?
Student A

a. Read the conversation.

A: What’s the matter?
B: I’m sad.
A: Don’t be sad. Cheer up.
B: Thanks.

b. Have four conversations with B. Ask B What’s the matter? B answers. Then choose a phrase below.

- Relax
- Have a holiday
- Open the window
- Have a drink
- Don’t worry

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>I’m bored.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>I’m tired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>I’m cold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>I’m hungry.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c. Change roles. B asks you What’s the matter? You answer with 1 below. B responds with a phrase. Then you respond, e.g. Thanks, OK, Good idea, etc.

d. Cover the phrases and do all eight conversations again from memory.

4B NICO’S DAY
Student A

a. Ask B the questions below. B must find the answers in the text.

1. What time does Nico get up? (He gets up at 6.30.)
2. What does he have for breakfast? (He has a coffee and cereal.)
3. What two things does he check at the restaurant? (He checks the reservations and his emails.)
4. What time do all the customers arrive? (They arrive at 1.30.)
5. How many customers do they have in the restaurant at lunchtime? (They have 85 customers.)
6. What does Nico ask the customers? (He asks if they are happy with the food.)
7. What does Nico do after lunch? (He goes back to the kitchen and plans the food for the evening menu.)
8. What time does he go home in the afternoon? (He goes home at 5.30.)
9. What does Nico do at 7.30? (He goes back to the restaurant and checks everything is OK.)
10. What time does Nico go home? (He goes home at 10 o’clock.)

b. Look at the text. Find the answers to B’s questions.

4C SHORT LIFE, LONG LIFE?
Students A+B

Interview your partner. A ask the questions in the questionnaire. B answer and give more information if you can. Then change roles.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>How often do you...?</th>
<th>6 drink alcohol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a every day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 have breakfast</td>
<td>b hardly ever / never</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a hardly ever / never</td>
<td>c sometimes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b sometimes / usually</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c always</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>7 see your friends</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a sometimes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b often</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c very often</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>How many...?</th>
<th>8 hours do you usually sleep a day</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a 0 to 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 cups of coffee do you drink a day</td>
<td>b 5 to 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>c 7 to 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Which of these is true for you?</td>
<td>1 I’m not very positive about life.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b I’m usually positive about life.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>c I’m always positive about life.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Now calculate your partner’s score.

\[a = 5 \quad b = 7 \quad c = 10 \quad \text{Total score} = \text{number of years you live}\]
5A DO YOU WANT TO BE FAMOUS? Students A+B

Interview each other with the questionnaire. Ask Can you...? If the answer is Yes, I can, ask How well? Do you think your partner has the X Factor?

You want to be famous – but what can you do?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Music</th>
<th>✓/✗</th>
<th>How well?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sing</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play an instrument</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dance</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read or write music</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Art</th>
<th>✓/✗</th>
<th>How well?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>take artistic photos</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw cartoons</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paint pictures</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>design websites or logos</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words</th>
<th>✓/✗</th>
<th>How well?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>write short stories</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write poems or song lyrics</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak foreign languages</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak in public</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sport</th>
<th>✓/✗</th>
<th>How well?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>run a half marathon</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play a team sport</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do a winter or water sport</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do an individual sport</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5B SPOT THE DIFFERENCES Student A

You and B have the same picture but with eight differences.

a Tell B what is happening in flats 1–4 and in the garden on the left. B will tell you what is different in his/ her picture. (Circle the differences.)

b Listen to B telling you what is happening in flats 5–8 and in the garden on the right. Look at your picture and tell B if it is the same or different. If it is different, tell B what is happening. (Circle the differences.)

c When you finish, compare the two pictures.
5C WHAT DO YOU DO? WHAT ARE YOU DOING NOW?
Student A
a Ask B your questions.
   • What do you do?
   • What are you doing now?
   • Are you wearing a watch today?
   • Do you usually wear a watch?
   • What kind of books do you usually read?
   • What are you reading at the moment?
b Answer B’s questions.

6A READING IN ENGLISH
Students A+B

How do you usually read?
a on paper  b on screen  c on an eReader

What kind of things do you read?
a books  d websites
b newspapers  e work documents
c magazines  f others (what?)

When and where do you usually read?
a at work / school  b when you are on a bus or train
c on holiday  d before you go to bed

Do you ever need to read in English? What?

7B STAMFORD BRIDGE  Students A+B

Tourist Information UK

STAMFORD BRIDGE

Stamford Bridge is a small village in the North of England, near York. It is about 230 miles (370 kilometres) from London. It has a population of 3,500 people. It is famous for a battle between the English and the Vikings in 1066.

NB Don’t confuse Stamford Bridge near York with Stamford Bridge in London, the stadium of Chelsea Football Club!

7C A NIGHT TO REMEMBER  Student A
a Ask B the questions about Mehmet’s night.
   1 When and where was it? (Last year, in Istanbul.)
   2 Who was he with? Why? (His friends. It was his best friend’s birthday.)
   3 What colour T-shirt did he wear? (Black.)
   4 What is Cezayir? (It’s an old building with a bar and a restaurant.)
   5 What did they do after dinner? (They had a coffee and then they went to the beach to have a swim.)
   6 Was the sea cold? (No, it was warm.)
   7 Why did he go home in his friend’s car? (Because he couldn’t find his car keys.)
   8 What time did he get home? (Really late, at five o’clock in the morning.)

b Answer B’s questions about Maria Julia’s night.
c Whose memory is better?
8A POLICE INTERVIEW
Student A

Work in pairs with another A. You are police officers. There was a robbery last night. B and B are two friends. You think they were responsible. They say that they went out for dinner and went to the cinema last night. You want to know if this is true.

a Look at the Police interview form and prepare to ask the Bs the questions. Think of more questions to get more details about the evening, e.g. What did you wear? What did you eat and drink? What film was it?

b Interview one of the Bs. Write down his / her answers in the form. (Your partner interviews the other B.)

c Compare with your partner. Did the two Bs tell exactly the same story? If not, arrest them!

8C THE GHOST ROOM Student A

a Look at the picture for a minute. Try to remember what’s in the room.

b Ask B the questions.

- a TV? (No, there wasn’t.)
- a double or a single bed? (There was a single bed.)
- a mirror? Where was it? (Yes, there was. It was on the table.)
- any plants? (No, there weren’t.)
- any books in the room? (No, there weren’t.)
- How many windows? (There were two.)

c Close your books. Answer B’s questions.
9C **QUIZ NIGHT** Student A

a Complete your sentences 1–8 with the comparative from the **bold** adjectives.

1. **small** Spain is ________ than France.
   (True. Spain is 505,000 square kilometres and France is 544,000.)

2. **long** The river Amazon is ________ than the river Nile.
   (False. The Amazon is about 6,400 km long and the Nile is about 6,670 km long.)

3. **old** Oxford University is ________ than Cambridge University.
   (True. Oxford University was founded in 1170 and Cambridge 40 years later.)

4. **short** The English alphabet is ________ than the Arabic alphabet.
   (True. There are 26 letters in the English alphabet and 28 in the Arabic alphabet.)

5. **dangerous** K2 is ________ to climb than Mount Everest.
   (True. 40% of climbers who get to the top of K2 die, but only 9% of climbers of Everest die.)

6. **large** A gigabyte is ________ than a megabyte.
   (True. A megabyte is 1,000 bytes, but a gigabyte is 1,000 megabytes.)

7. **dry** The Sahara Desert is ________ than the Atacama Desert.
   (False. Sahara Desert average rainfall = 25 mm; Atacama Desert average rainfall = 0.1 mm.)

8. **far** New Zealand is ________ south than Australia.
   (True. It's 2,000 km south-east of Australia.)

b Play **Quiz Night**. You are the presenter.

- Read your sentence 1 to B. B must say if it's true or false.
- Tell B if he/she is right and give the extra information in brackets.
- If B is right, he/she wins 500 euros. Then read sentence 2 for 1,000 euros, sentence 3 for 2,000 euros, sentence 4 for 4,000 euros, etc.
- If B gets a question wrong, he/she loses the money, but continues to play. The prize starts again from 500 euros.

c Play **Quiz Night** again. You are the contestant.

---

10A **CITIES QUIZ** Student A

a Complete your questions with the superlative of the adjectives in brackets.

1. What's the ________ city in the world? (noisy)
   a. **Tokyo** b. Madrid c. Rome

2. What's the ________ city in the world? (hot)
   a. Rio de Janeiro b. **Bangkok** c. Nairobi

3. Which city has the ________ monument in the world? (popular)

4. What's the ________ city in Europe? (foggy)
   a. Prague b. London c. **Milan**

5. Which city has the ________ traffic jams in the world? (bad)
   a. São Paulo b. **Beijing** c. Mexico City

b Answer B's questions.

c Ask B your questions. Does he/she know the answers? (The correct answers are in **bold**.)

What's the noisiest city in the world, Tokyo, Madrid, or Rome?

---

10B **WHAT ARE YOU GOING TO DO?**

Student A

a Ask B the questions below.

**Tonight**
- What / do tonight?
- / study English? Why (not)?

**Tomorrow**
- What time / get up tomorrow?
- Where / have lunch?

**Next weekend**
- / go away next weekend? Where to?
- What / do on Saturday night?

b Answer B's questions.
1B WHERE ARE THEY FROM? Student B

a Answer A's questions about person 1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Masako</th>
<th>Carlo</th>
<th>Petra</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>From</td>
<td>Japan (Osaka)</td>
<td>Italy (Milan)</td>
<td>Hungary (Budapest)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b Ask A the questions about person 4.
- Where's Ali from?
- Where in (country)?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Ali</th>
<th>Antonia</th>
<th>Oliver</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>From</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1C WHAT'S HIS / HER REAL NAME? Student B

a Look at the names of your four people. Two are their real names and two aren't. Cross (×) the names you think are not their real names.

- Jude Law, actor
- Tina Turner, singer
- Eminem, singer
- Scarlett Johansson, actress

b Answer A's questions.

- Tom Hanks, actor
- Bono, singer
- Angelina Jolie, actress
- Katy Perry, singer

✓ real name Paul Hewson ✓ real name Katheryn Hudson

c Check your answers to a. Tell A I think ______ is/isn't his/her real name. If A says No, it isn't, ask A What's his/her real name? How do you spell it? and write the name under the photo.

2C WHAT'S THE MATTER? Student B

a Read the conversation.

A What's the matter?
B I'm sad.
A Don't be sad. Cheer up.
B Thanks.

c Have four more conversations.
Ask A What's the matter? A answers. Then choose a phrase below.

Close the window.
Have a sandwich.
Read a book.
Sit down.

d Cover the phrases and do all eight conversations again from memory.
**PE2 WHAT’S THE TIME?**

**Student B**

Ask and answer questions with A to complete the times on the clocks. Then compare your clocks.

Clock 2: What’s the time? What time is it?

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

---

**4B NICO’S DAY**  **Student B**

a. Look at the *Father & Daughter* text. Find the answers to A’s questions.

b. Ask A the questions below. A must find the answers in the text.

1. What part of the newspaper does Nico read? *(He reads the sports section.)*
2. Where does he go after breakfast? *(He goes to the market.)*
3. What time does he start cooking the food for lunch? *(He starts cooking at 10.30.)*
4. How many cups of coffee does he have in the morning? *(He has three cups of coffee.)*
5. What time does Nico have lunch? *(He has lunch at 3.30.)*
6. Why doesn’t Nico enjoy his lunch? *(Because he doesn’t have time to relax.)*
7. How long does he spend with the children in the afternoon? *(He spends a couple of hours / two hours with them.)*
8. What do Nico and the children do between 5.30 and 7.30? *(The children do their homework and Nico makes their dinner.)*
9. What is the first thing Nico does when he gets home? *(He has a shower.)*
10. What time does he go to bed? *(He goes to bed at 11 o’clock.)*

---

**5B SPOT THE DIFFERENCES**  **Student B**

You and A have the same picture but with eight differences.

a. Listen to A telling you what is happening in flats 1–4 and in the garden on the left. Look at your picture and tell A if it is the same or different. If it is different, tell A what is happening. **Circle** the differences.

b. Tell A what is happening in flats 5–8 and in the garden on the right. A will tell you what is different in his / her picture. **Circle** the differences.

c. When you finish, compare the two pictures.
5C WHAT DO YOU DO? WHAT ARE YOU DOING NOW?  Student B

a Answer A’s questions.

b Ask A your questions.
   • Do your parents work? What do they do?
   • What do you think they are doing now?
   • Do you watch a series on TV?
   • What TV series are you watching at the moment?
   • Is it raining now?
   • Does it rain a lot at this time of year?

7A WHERE WERE YOU?  Student B

a Answer A’s questions.

A Where were you at nine o'clock yesterday morning?

B I was in bed.

b Ask A your questions. Ask Where were you at...?
   • 8.30 yesterday morning
   • 6.30 yesterday evening
   • 11.30 yesterday morning
   • 10 o’clock last night
   • 5 o’clock yesterday afternoon
   • 6.30 this morning

Useful language
at home / work / school / university
in bed / the street / my car
on the bus / the train

7C A NIGHT TO REMEMBER  Student B

a Answer A’s questions about Mehmet’s night.

b Ask A the questions about Maria Julia’s night.

1 Where was she on holiday? (In Athens.)
2 Who did she want to see? (A Greek man that she knew when she was at university.)
3 How did she try to contact him? (She called him many times, but he didn’t answer.)
4 Where did they meet? (At her hotel.)
5 Why was she embarrassed? (Because her clothes weren’t very special and her hair was a mess.)
6 What did they do? (They walked round the centre of Athens.)
7 What language did they communicate in? (They spoke English.)
8 What was the weather like? (It was a warm night.)
9 What time did she get back to the hotel? (At three o’clock in the morning.)

C Whose memory is better?

8A POLICE INTERVIEW  Student B

Work in pairs with another B. You are friends. Last night you met, had dinner, and went to the cinema. There was a robbery last night. A and A are police officers. They think you were responsible, and they want to interview you separately. If you both tell the same story, you are innocent!

a Prepare your story. Use these questions. Think of extra details, e.g. What did you wear? What did you eat and drink? What film was it?
   • What time / where did you meet?
   • What time / where did you have dinner?
   • What time / where did you go to the cinema?
   • What did you do after the cinema?
   • What time did you get home?

b Answer A’s questions.

c Did you and your friend tell the same story?
8C THE GHOST ROOM  Student B

a. Look at the picture for a minute. Try to remember what's in the room.


c. Ask A the questions.

- a clock? Where was it?
  (Yes, there was. It was next to the window.)
- a carpet on the floor? (No, there wasn't.)
- a lamp or light? Where was it?
  (Yes, there was. It was on the wall.)
- any pictures on the wall? What of?
  (Yes, there was one. It was of a woman.)
- any cupboards? (No, there weren't.)
- How many chairs? (There was one.)

---

9A GET READY! COOK!  Students A+B

Jack's Meal

Starter
- carrot and orange soup

Main course
- chicken breasts filled with cream cheese

Dessert
- pancakes with chocolate sauce

Liz's Meal

Starter
- carrot and onion salad

Main course
- pasta with creamy chicken sauce

Dessert
- chocolate and orange mousse

9B SUGAR AND SALT  Students A+B

How much sugar?
According to the American Heart Association, a woman should have no more than 29g (grams) of sugar a day (= 5 teaspoons) and a man no more than 36g (= 9 teaspoons).
- a can of Coke has approximately 35g of sugar
- an apple has approximately 23g of sugar
- a small (40g) bar of dark chocolate has approximately 7g of sugar
- an egg doesn't have any sugar

How much salt?
According to UK Government studies, an adult should eat no more than 6g of salt a day.
- a packet of crisps has approximately 3g of salt
- a slice of white bread has approximately 0.5g of salt
- a bottle of mineral water has approximately 0.0023g of salt
- a bottle of olive oil doesn't have any salt
9C QUIZ NIGHT  Student B

a Complete your sentences 1–8 with the comparative from the **bold** adjectives.

1 **old** The Pyramids in Egypt are _______ than the Parthenon in Greece.
   (True. The Pyramids are about 4,500 years old and the Parthenon is about 2,500 years old.)

2 **short** The First World War was _______ than the Second World War.
   (True. The First World War lasted four years (1914–1918), but the Second World War lasted six years (1939–1945).)

3 **high** The mountains on Earth are _______ than the mountains on Mars.
   (False. Olympus Mons on Mars is 21 km high; Everest is about 8 km high.)

4 **big** China is _______ than Canada.
   (False. Canada is 10,000,000 square metres; China is about 9,600,000 square metres.)

5 **popular** In the UK coffee is now _______ than tea.
   (False. On average, the British drink 165,000,000 cups of tea a day and 70,000,000 cups of coffee.)

6 **warm** The Mediterranean Sea is _______ than the Red Sea.
   (False. Mediterranean Sea average temperature = 24–26 degrees Celsius; Red Sea average = 26–30 degrees Celsius.)

7 **good** It's _______ to do exercise in the morning than in the afternoon.
   (False. In the afternoon between 4 and 5 p.m. the body temperature is at its maximum, which means it is the perfect time to exercise.)

8 **hot** The earth is _______ than the moon.
   (False. The average temperature of the moon is about 123 degrees Celsius during the day; the average temperature of the earth is 13–17 degrees Celsius.)

b Play Quiz Night. You are the contestant.
   • A will read you his/her sentence 1. You must say if it's true or false.
   • A will tell you if you are right, and give you extra information.
   • If you are right, you win 500 euros. A then reads you sentence 2 for 1,000 euros, sentence 3 for 2,000 euros, sentence 4 for 4,000 euros, etc.
   • If you get a question wrong, you lose all the money, but continue to play. The prize starts again from 500 euros.

c Play Quiz Night again. You are the presenter. Use your questions 1–8.

10A CITIES QUIZ  Student B

a Complete your questions with the superlative of the adjectives in brackets.

b Ask A your questions. Does he/she know the answers? (the correct answers are in **bold**.)

1 Which city has the ____ quality of life in the world? (good)
   a Vienna  b Copenhagen  c Miami

2 Which US city has the ____ population? (big)
   a New York  b Chicago  c San Francisco

3 Which city has the ____ airport in the world? (busy)
   a London  b Atlanta  c Singapore

4 What’s the ____ capital city in the world? (high)
   a La Paz, Bolivia  b Kathmandu, Nepal  c Lima, Peru

5 Which city has the ____ public transport in the world? (expensive)
   a Budapest  b Athens  c London

Which city has the best quality of life in the world, Vienna, Copenhagen, or Miami?

c Answer A’s questions.

10B WHAT ARE YOU GOING TO DO?  Student B

a Answer A’s questions.

b Ask A the questions below.

**Tonight**
- What / have for dinner tonight?
- What / do after dinner?

**Tomorrow**
- go to work (or school) tomorrow?
- What / do in the evening?

**Next weekend**
- go out on Friday night? What / do?
- What / do on Sunday?
1 COMPLETING A FORM

a  Look at the information about capital letters.

- **Capital letters**
  - In English these words start with a CAPITAL letter.
  - names and surnames: Melissa Rogers
  - countries, nationalities, and languages: France, French
  - towns and cities: New York
  - days of the week: Monday
  - the first word in a sentence: Her father is from Milan.
  - the pronoun: I, She's Russian and I'm Mexican.

b  Complete the form with your information.

c  Write this text again with capital letters where necessary.

my name's les. i'm from brno in the czech republic, and
i speak czech, german, and a little english. my teacher
is american. her name's kate. my english classes are on
mondays and wednesdays.

d  Write a similar text about you. Check the capital letters
are correct. Then check for any other mistakes.

p.9

2 A PERSONAL PROFILE

a  Read Jamie's profile. Do you have similar interests?

b  Look at the examples below.

- **and, but, and or**
  - I speak English **and** a little italian.
  - I watch the news **and** football at the weekend.
  - I speak English, **but** I don't speak italian.
  - I'm from scotland, **but** I live in London.
  - I don't speak English **or** italian.
  - I don't like classical music **or** jazz.
  - e.g. **e.g.** = for example. We often use it when we write
    informally. I like rock music, **e.g.** coldplay.

c  Write a profile of yourself. Use the same headings
(Hometown, Music, etc.). Attach a photo if you can.
Use **and**, **but**, and **or** to join your ideas together.

d  Check your profile for mistakes (e.g. capital letters and
spelling).

p.25
3 A MAGAZINE ARTICLE

a Read Cristina's article. Is her Saturday like yours?

b Look at the examples below.

- **after and then**
  Use after + another word, e.g. after lunch, after work, after that, etc.
  Use then to say what happens next, e.g. I get up and then I have breakfast.

c Read her article again and check you understand the highlighted words. Then use them to complete the sentences below.

1. Jack usually gets up at 7.30. ______ he has a shower.
2. ______ lunch I often sleep for half an hour.
3. She always has a bath ______ she goes to bed.
4. ______ the week I work ______ 9.00 ______ 5.00.
5. I usually get home at about midnight, and ______ I go to bed.
6. We usually watch TV ______ it's time to go to bed.

d You are going to write an article for a magazine called My favourite day. Write four paragraphs. First, look at the questions and make notes of what you can say.

- What's your favourite day of the week? Why?
- What do you usually do in the morning?
- Where do you have lunch? What do you usually do after lunch?
- What do you usually do in the evening?

e Now write your article. Choose which of your ideas you want to use. Don't forget to use some of the highlighted words to link together your ideas.

f Check your article for mistakes. Show your article to another student. Find one thing in your partner's article that is the same for you.

→ p.31
4 SOCIAL NETWORKING
a Alain is travelling round the world. He writes posts and puts photos from different places on a social networking site. Read his posts and match them to the photos. What countries do you think he is in?

5 AN INFORMAL EMAIL
To practise your English you can write to a ‘penfriend’ in another country. You can find penfriend websites on the internet.

a Read the email. Then cover it. Can you remember what information Chiara gives in the three main paragraphs?

From: Chiara [chiaraarossi@hotmail.com]
To: Stefan [stefan7541200@moebius.ch]
Subject: Hi from Italy!

Hi Stefan
My name's Chiara. I'm 19, and I'm from Milan, in Italy. I'm a receptionist at a hotel. I'm studying English because I need it for my job.

I live with my parents and my brother and sister. My father is an architect and my mother works in a clothes shop. My brother and sister are at school.

I don't have very much free time because I work six days a week. I usually go shopping on my day off. In the evening I like listening to music, or chatting to friends. I really like hip hop – do you like it?

Please write soon.
Best wishes
Chiara

b Look at the six underlined spelling mistakes. Can you spell these words?

Informal emails
beginning: Hi + name
middle: Use contractions, e.g. I'm from Milan.
end: Best wishes, or Love (for a good friend)

c You are going to write a similar email to your teacher. First, make notes about the following information.

| Paragraph 1 | Your name, age, and where you are from. What you do, and why you are studying English. |
| Paragraph 2 | Who you live with. Your family. |
| Paragraph 3 | What you like doing in your free time. |

d Now write your email. Use your notes and the language in the information box.

e Check your email for mistakes.
6 DESCRIBING YOUR HOME

a Read the website and the description of a flat in London. Would you like to stay there?

b Number the information in the order it comes in the description.

- Details about some of the rooms
- How far it is from the city centre
- What floor the flat is on
- What rooms there are
- What services there are nearby
- What you can see from the flat
- Where it is

c Look at the information about so.

There's a sofa bed in the study, so you can use it as an extra bedroom.
We can use so to express a result or consequence, e.g.
I was very tired, so I went to bed early.
My office is near my house, so I walk to work.

d You are going to write a description of your house or flat for the website. First, make notes on the topics in b.

e Now write your description. Choose which of your ideas you want to use. Don't forget to say where you would like to go.

f Check your description for mistakes. Show it to other students. Whose house or flat would you like to stay in?

p.63
7 A FORMAL EMAIL

a Read the advertisement and Pascal’s email. Complete the email with the words in the list.

about confirm Dear double from hope Regards reservation would

b Look at the information box and then write a similar email to the White Cottage Bed and Breakfast.

• Decide how many nights you want to stay and the kind of room you need.
• Ask an Is there / Are there…? question.

Formal emails (e.g. to a hotel or Bed and Breakfast, a language school, etc.)

Beginning
Dear Mr / Mrs / Ms + surname, or
Dear Sir / Madam if you don’t know the person’s name
Use a comma (,) (or nothing), NOT a colon (:)
Dear Mr Brown, NOT Dear Mr Brown:

Middle
Don’t use contractions.
I would like to make a reservation
NOT I’d like to...

End
Regards
Your first name + surname

The White Cottage
Bed and Breakfast in West Bexington, Dorset
Mark and Diana Buckingham and their family welcome you to their 200-year-old country home in a small village in Dorset.

Two double bedrooms, one single, and a family suite TV WiFi

The White Cottage – reservation
From: Pascal Mercier [pascal80@gmail.com]
To: thewhitecottage@greentomato.co.uk

1. _______ Mr and Mrs Buckingham,
2. _______ like to make a 3 _______ for a 4 _______ room
and a single room for two nights, 5 _______ 24th to 26th June.

We 6 _______ to arrive by car at 7 _______ 5.00 in the afternoon on the 24th. Is there a place where we can park near your house?

Could you please 8 _______ the reservation?

9 _______

Pascal Mercier
13
1 A A cheese and tomato sandwich, please.
B That’s 3 euros and 20 cents.
2 A So Anna, your classes are on Tuesday and Thursday mornings.
B Que? Sorry.
3 British Airways flight to Madrid is now boarding at gate number 9.
4 A Where to, madam?
B Manchester Road, please. Number 16.
5 A Here’s your key, sir. Room 12.
B Thank you.
6 A Here we are.
B Oh no. It’s closed.
A Look, it says ‘Closed on Mondays’!

29
1 The train waiting at platform 13 is the Eurostar to Paris.
2 A Excuse me! How far is it to Dublin?
B It’s about 40 kilometres.
C Thanks a lot.
3 I’ll love.
4 Will all passengers on flight BA 234 to New York please go to gate 6D immediately.
5 A How much is that?
B A pizza and two coles. That’s 17 euros.
6 A What’s your address?
B It’s 80 Park Road.
A Sorry, what number?
B 80, 8th.
7 Teacher OK, can you be quiet, please?
Open your books on page 90.
Student 1 What page?
Student 2 Page 90.

39
Receptionist Hello, are you a new student?
Darly Yes, I am.
Receptionist Sit down, please. I’m the receptionist and my name’s Mark. I’m just going to ask you a few questions.
Darly OK.
Receptionist Right. What’s your first name?
Darly Darly.
Receptionist How do you spell that?
Darly D-A-R-L-Y.
Receptionist D-A-R-L-Y.
Darly Yes, that’s right.
Receptionist And what’s your surname?
Darly Bezerra.
Receptionist Bezerra. Is that B-E-Z-E-R-A?
Darly B-E-Z-E-double R-A.
Receptionist B-E-Z-E-double R-A. OK, where are you from?
Darly I’m from Brazil.
Receptionist Where in Brazil?
Darly From Rio.
Receptionist And how old are you?
Darly I’m 20.

Receptionist What’s your address?
Darly In Rio?
Receptionist Yes.
Darly It’s 350 Avenida Princesa Isabel.
Receptionist That’s 350 Avenida Princesa Isabel.
Darly Yes.
Receptionist What’s your postcode?
Darly Sorry?
Receptionist The postcode, you know, a number.
Darly Ah yes. It’s 22011-010.
Receptionist 22011-010. Great. What’s your email address?
Darly It’s dbezerra@maer.com.
Receptionist And what’s your phone number?
Darly My mobile number or my home number in Rio?
Receptionist Both – home and mobile.
Darly My phone number in Rio is 55 – that’s the code for Brazil – 219 560733.
Receptionist 55 219 560733.
Darly Yes, that’s right. And my mobile number is 07621 3784511. It’s an English mobile.
Receptionist 07621 3784511. That’s great, Darly. Thank you, OK, so you’re in level 6.
Your first class is on Monday.

44
Rob Hi. My name’s Rob Walker. I live here in London. I work in London, and I write about London! I work for a magazine called London 24seven. I write about the city, the restaurants... it’s fun! I love London. It’s a great city.
Jenny Hi. My name’s Jenny Zielinski. I’m from New York. The number one city in the world. I’m the assistant editor of a magazine, New York 24seven. I’m the new assistant editor. But this week, I’m on a business trip to London. This is my first time in the UK. It’s very exciting!

48
Waitress Is your tea OK?
Jenny Yes, thank you. It’s very quiet this evening.
Waitress Yes, very relaxing. Are you on holiday?
Jenny No, I’m here on business.
Waitress Where are you from?
Jenny I’m from New York. What about you?
Waitress I’m from Budapest, in Hungary.
Jenny Really? Oh, sorry.
Waitress No problem.
Darly Jenny? Hello?
Rob Is that Jennifer?
Presenter And our first guest tonight is...
Wayne Wayne.
Presenter Hello, Wayne. Welcome to the programme. What's your wife's name, Wayne?
Wayne Her name's Tanya.
Presenter Tanya? Nice name. OK team, you have one minute to ask Wayne questions about his job and then one minute to ask him about Tanya's job, starting now. Let's have your first question.
David Hi, Wayne. Do you work in an office?
Wayne No, I don't.
Lorna Do you work in the evening?
Wayne It depends. Yes, sometimes.
Kate Do you make things?
Wayne No, I don't.
Lorna Do you wear a uniform or special clothes?
Wayne Er, yes - I wear special clothes.
Kate Do you drive your job?
Wayne No, I don't.
Lorna Do you work with other people?
Wayne Yes, I do. Ten people.
Kate Do you have special qualifications?
Wayne Qualifications? No, I don't.
David Do you speak foreign languages?
Wayne No, only English.
Presenter You only have time for one more question team.
David Er, do you earn a lot of money?
Wayne Yes, I do.
Presenter Your time's up...

2 19)
Kevin Do you like Star Wars?
Samantha No, I don't.
Kevin Why not? It's a fantastic film.
Samantha I don't like science fiction.
Kevin What kind of films do you like?
Samantha I love foreign films, French, Italian, Spanish.
Kevin Oh.
Samantha My salad's very nice.
Kevin Good. My burger's nice too.
Samantha What kind of music do you like?
Kevin Music? I love heavy metal. What about you?
Samantha Opera.
Kevin Opera - that's not really my thing!
Kevin What do you do at the weekend?
Samantha I go to the cinema, I go to restaurants, I cook. I love good food. And you?
Kevin Well, I don't cook! I meet friends and we play video games.
Samantha You meet friends and you play video games. Wow.
Kevin Do you want another drink?
Kevin I need to go. Nice to meet you, Bye.
Kevin Oh, Bye.
Waiter The bill, sir.
Kevin The bill! Hey, Samantha. Wait!

2 25)
Rob Erm... Jennifer?
Jenny Rob?
Rob Yes, hello. Nice to meet you, Jennifer.
Jenny Call me Jenny. Good to meet you, too.
Rob Welcome to London. Am I late?
Jenny Erm... just a little.
Rob What time is it?
Jenny Nine fifteen.
Rob I'm really sorry. The traffic is terrible today.
Jenny No problem.
Rob How are you? How's the hotel?
Jenny The hotel's very nice. But breakfast isn't great, I'd like a good cup of coffee. Not hotel coffee, real coffee.
Rob OK, let's get a coffee.
Jenny Do I have time? I have a meeting at nine-thirty.
Rob With Daniel?
Jenny Yes.
Rob Don't worry. We have lots of time, the office is very near. So, Jenny, where do you live in New York?

2 28)
Rob Here we are. This is the office. And this is Karen.
Jenny Hello, Karen.
Rob Karen, this is Jennifer Zielinski from the New York office.
Karen Hello, Jennifer.
Jenny Nice to meet you.
Rob Karen is our administrator. We all depend on her.
Karen Don't listen to Rob.

2 35)
Anna Who's that?
Isabel That's my boyfriend, Alex.
Anna He's good-looking. How old is he?
Isabel Twenty-six.
Anna What does he do?
Isabel He's a policeman.
Anna Really? Does he like it?
Isabel Yes, he loves it. And this is my dad.
Anna He looks very young.
Isabel Well, he's fifty-five this year.
Anna He doesn't look fifty-five! Is that your mother?
Isabel No, that's Gloria, my stepmother.
Anna Is she nice?
Isabel Yes, she's great. She's a hairdresser - she does my hair for free!
Anna Oh, that's good. Who's that?
Isabel That's Natalie.
Anna Who's she?
Isabel My brother's girlfriend.
Anna She's pretty!
Isabel Do you think so?
Anna Yes. Don't you like her?
Isabel Not very much. She thinks she's very intelligent, but she's not really.
Anna What does she do?
Isabel She's at university. She studies French - but she can't speak it very well.

2 40)
Interviewer What time do you get up in the morning?
Amelia Me levanto a las seis y media. Nunca me quiero levantar porque estan temprano. Yo get up at half past six. I never want to get up because it's very early.
Interviewer Do you have breakfast?
Amelia Yes, a quick breakfast, and then I go to school.
Interviewer How do you go to school?
Amelia By bus. We have these yellow school buses - we call them liebers.

Interviewer What time do you start school?

Amelia At 8 o'clock. In the first lesson everyone is really sleepy.

Interviewer How many lessons do you have?

Amelia In the morning we usually have five but sometimes six.

Interviewer What time do you have lunch?

Amelia At 1 o'clock.

Interviewer That's a very long morning!

Amelia Yes, it is. We're very hungry at lunchtime.

Interviewer Where do you have lunch?

Amelia We have lunch at school in the cafeteria. We only have fifty minutes so we don't have much time to relax. We just eat our food and then run to the next lesson.

Interviewer How many lessons do you have in the afternoon?

Amelia On a good day only three, on a bad day five. After the second lesson everybody is tired and we don't concentrate on what the teacher is telling us.

Interviewer What time does school finish?

Amelia At half past five.

Interviewer Do you go home then?

Amelia It depends. On Mondays and Wednesdays I go to extra classes to prepare for university entrance exams, and on Tuesdays and Thursdays I have basketball practice.

Interviewer What do you do when you get home?

Amelia I just want to relax but it's impossible. I have homework and exams so I need to study! So I sit down at my desk and start working again. After dinner I go back to my room and study until 11 o'clock, or sometimes later.

Interviewer What time do you go to bed?

Amelia About half past eleven. I lie in bed and think about the next day and the lessons I have. Luckily, it's Friday today! No school tomorrow!

3 7]

GARY

Gary (sings)

Judge 1 Very nice Gary.

Judge 2 Yes, I like it. Well done.

JUSTIN

Justin (sings)

Judge 1 In a word... terrible!

Judge 2 Justin, you have a very pretty face, but I'm sorry, you can't sing!

NAOMI

Naomi (sings)

Judge 1 Thank you Naomi. Very nice.

Judge 2 Naomi, you have a beautiful voice, but I can't hear the feeling.

Judge 1 OK. Justin and Naomi. Thank you very much, but no thank you. Gary, congratulations. See you on the show next week.

Gary Fantastic! That's great. Thank you.

The best thing about the weather in London is that it never gets too extreme. It isn't usually very hot or very cold. In the summer it's sometimes sunny and sometimes cloudy, with temperatures of about 22 degrees. And of course it sometimes rains.

In winter the temperature is usually between zero and ten degrees. It can be windy and cold but it hardly ever snows.

In spring and in autumn the weather is very changeable - you can have all the four seasons in one day! It can be sunny in the morning, cloudy at lunchtime, raining in the afternoon, and then cold and windy in the evening. I always tell tourists to take their sunglasses and their umbrellas when they go out!

But one thing you don't often see these days in London is fog. A lot of tourists come to London and say 'Where's the fog? London is always foggy in films!' Well, it's true that, in the past, that is until the 1950s, London was a very foggy city because the air was really dirty. But today the air is clean and it's hardly ever foggy.

3 15]

Rob Hey, Jenny!

Jenny Oh hi, Rob. Is that coffee for me?

Rob Yes. A double espresso.

Jenny Oh wow, thanks. That's really nice of you.

Rob No problem. Do you have a meeting with Daniel?

Jenny Yes, another meeting. And you?

Rob I'm going to the office, too. I have an interview in twenty minutes.

Jenny Oh really? With who?

Rob A theatre director.

Jenny Sounds interesting.

Rob What time is your meeting with Daniel?

Jenny At half past nine.

Rob Ugh!

Jenny Oh no. Are you OK? I'm so sorry!

Rob I'm fine!

Jenny I'm really sorry. You can't wear that shirt to an interview!

Rob Don't worry, there's a clothes shop over there. I can buy a new one.

Jenny OK. I can help you choose one.

Jenny Oh, that's my phone. Sorry. I need to answer this. See you in there?

Rob OK.

3 19]

Eddie So, Jenny, what do you think of London?

Jenny I love it. Eddie! It's so cool!

Eddie What about the people in the office?

Jenny They're really nice. And they're very.. .polite!

Eddie What are you doing right now? You aren't in the office. I can hear traffic.

Jenny Right now? I am standing outside a men's clothing store.

Eddie You're what?

Jenny I'm waiting for Rob.

Eddie Who's Rob? Do you have a new boyfriend already?

Jenny Don't be silly. He's just a guy from the office. He's buying a new shirt.

Eddie Wait a minute. So you're waiting for a guy named Rob outside a men's clothing store?

Jenny Stop it. I don't have time to explain it all now. Oh, here he is now. I have to go.
Eddie OK. Have fun.
Jenny Bye, Eddie. I love you.
Rob So, what do you think?
Jenny You cannot be serious!
Rob What's wrong? You don't like my new shirt?
Jenny No way! You can't wear that to an interview! Come on, let's go back into the store and change it.
Rob OK.

3 33)
Interviewer What's your favourite time of day?
Martin It depends. During the week it's seven in the evening, because that's when I get home from work and when I can relax. But at the weekend my favourite time is breakfast time. I have a big breakfast, and I have time to read the papers and listen to the radio.

Interviewer What's your favourite day of the week?
Martin My favourite day of the week is Friday, because then I know the weekend is near.

Interviewer What's your favourite month?
Martin Probably May. It's when the weather starts to get warm and the evenings are long.

Interviewer What's your favourite season?
Martin Spring, because it means that winter is finally over. I love cycling, and spring is a great time for cycling - not too hot and not too cold.

Interviewer What's your favourite public holiday?
Martin Probably New Year's Eve, because you don't need to worry about buying presents or cooking a big lunch, and everybody's in a good mood.

3 49)
1 He was an English writer. He was born in the 16th century. He was married with three children. He was born in Stratford upon Avon. He is famous for his plays, for example Hamlet and Macbeth.
2 She was born in Los Angeles in 1926. She was a famous actress. She was blonde and very beautiful. Her real name was Norma Jean Baker. There is a famous painting of her by Andy Warhol.

3 52)
... and finally on the news today the story of two football fans who missed the big match.

Last week Chelsea played Arsenal at Chelsea's famous stadium, Stamford Bridge in west London. It was the match that football fans all over the world wanted to watch. Charles Spencer's daughter and a friend were among the lucky people with tickets. The girls were in Alkhorp, which is about 140 km from London, and they decided to go by taxi. But when the taxi stopped in a small village, it was clear that something was wrong. They were in Stamford Bridge, but not at the Chelsea stadium. The driver had typed Stamford Bridge into his satnav. But unfortunately, Stamford Bridge is also a small village in the north of England - and that's where they were! Of course, they missed the match.

3 60)
Interviewer When was your memorable night?
David To puedo decir exactamente, fue el once de julio del dos mil diez. I can tell you exactly, it was the 11th July 2010.

Interviewer Why do you remember the date?
David Because it was the final of the Football World Cup, Spain against Holland.

Interviewer Where were you?
David Well, I'm a flight attendant and that day I was in Acapulco in Mexico.

Interviewer Who were you with?
David I was with three other Spanish flight attendants.

Interviewer Where did you go to watch the match?
David We didn't go out. We watched the match in the hotel bar.

Interviewer And what did you wear to watch the match?
David We wore Spanish football shirts which we bought in a shop and we also had red and yellow scarves.

Interviewer Tell me about the night. What did you do?
David Well, the match was on in the afternoon Mexican time. We went down to the hotel bar early to get a good seat. There was a big screen. The bar was full of Spanish tourists. There was a great atmosphere.

Interviewer And Spain won the match, of course.
David Yes. It wasn't a good match, but when Spain got their winning goal everybody shouted and jumped up. It was amazing! When the match finished we all went out. We wanted to celebrate. We went to another bar near the beach and it was full of Spanish people. Everyone was really happy. We had a great party!

Interviewer What was the weather like? Do you remember?
David Yes, it was a warm night. About 20 degrees, I think.

Interviewer What time did you get back to your hotel?
David I can't remember exactly but very late, about three in the morning. Luckily, I had a free day the next day so I didn't need to get up early.

Interviewer Why was this night so memorable?
David First, of course, because Spain won their first World Cup, but also because of the circumstances - we were very far away from Spain, thousands of kilometres away in another country, but we all felt very Spanish that night!

3 64)
Interviewer Who is your role model?
Rob So, Jenny, we have a free morning. What do you want to do?
Jenny Well, you're the expert on London life! What do you suggest?
Rob Well, we can go cycling.

Jenny I don't have a bike.
Rob We can rent bikes. It's easy.
Jenny That's cool.
Rob OK, great. So we can cycle through the parks, and you can see a bit of London. Oh, hang on. Ugh oh. It's Daniel. Daniel, hi!
Daniel Hi, Rob. You need to do an interview this morning, with an artist. He's at the Tate Modern.

Rob Can I do the interview on Monday?
Daniel Sorry, he can only do this morning.
Rob OK, send me the details.
Daniel Thank you very much, Rob. I'm sorry.
Jenny That's OK, I understand. Work is work.
Rob But I can meet you later, outside the Tate Modern. It's on the South Bank.
Jenny I can find it. I have a map. I can cycle there.

Rob Let's meet at twelve o'clock then.
Jenny Great.
Inspector: Were you just his secretary?
Claudia: What do you mean?
Inspector: Were you in love with Mr. Travers?
Claudia: No, I wasn’t.
Inspector: The truth please, Claudia.
Claudia: Very well, inspector. Yes, I was
in love with him and he said he was
in love with me. He said he wanted to leave
his wife — Amanda — and marry me.
I was stupid. I believed him. He used me,
inspector. I was very angry with him.
Inspector: Did you kill him?
Claudia: No, inspector. I loved Jeremy.

Before dinner, Gordon had a drink with Jeremy in
the library.
Jeremy: Ah, thanks, Gordon.
Gordon: Listen, Jeremy, I want to talk to you
about Barbara.
Jeremy: Barbara? What’s the problem?
Gordon: It’s not exactly a problem. I am in
love with her, and I want to marry her.
Jeremy: Marry Barbara? Marry my daughter!
Are you crazy? Never! You don’t love
Barbara. You only want her money!
Gordon: That’s not true, Jeremy. I love her.
Jeremy: Listen to me. If you marry Barbara,
when I die all my money goes to Claudia.
Gordon: To Claudia? To your secretary?
Jeremy: Yes.
Gordon: That’s your last word, Jeremy?
Jeremy: Yes, it is.
Amanda: Dinner everybody!
Reader: At midnight Gordon was in the
sitting room. He finished his whisky and
went upstairs.
Jeremy: Who is it? Gordon?

Barbara: Let’s go upstairs. Follow me. Be
careful. The ceiling is very low here.
Leo: It’s a very old house.
Barbara: Yes, the house is three hundred
years old. My family lived here for nearly
eighty years. There are six bedrooms. This
was my father’s bedroom.
Kim: Is there central heating in the house?
Barbara: Yes, there is. Why do you ask? Are
you cold?
Kim: Yes, it’s very cold in here.
Leo: That’s because we’re from California.
Barbara: Let’s go and see the other
bedrooms.
Leo: Yes, of course.
Leo: Well, what do you think, Kim? I love it!
Don’t you?
Kim: I’m not sure. There’s something about
the house I don’t like.
Leo: Kim, it’s perfect for the kids. Think of
the garden. And it’s a real authentic English
country house. What do you say?
Kim: I suppose so. If you’re sure.
Leo: I am sure! Mrs... er, Barbara. We want it.
We want to rent the house.
Barbara: Excellent.
Leo: When can we move in?
Barbara: As soon as you like.
film, but I was tired after my long journey and after half an hour I went to sleep.

4:25

Stephen In the middle of the night I suddenly woke up! I looked at my watch. It was two o'clock in the morning. The television was off! But how? There was no remote control, and I didn't get up and turn it off. The light was on, but suddenly the light went off too. Now I was scared! I couldn't see anything strange, but I could feel that there was somebody or something in the room.

I got out of bed and turned on the light and TV again. Little by little I started to relax, and I went to sleep again. When I woke up it was morning. I had breakfast and checked out.

Interviewer So the question is, did you see the ghost?

Stephen No, I didn't see the ghost, but I definitely felt something or somebody in the room when I woke up in the night.

Interviewer Were you frightened?

Stephen Yes! I was! Very frightened!

Interviewer Would you like to spend another night in the hotel?

Stephen Definitely, yes.

Interviewer Why?

Stephen Well, I'm sure there was something strange in that room. I can't explain the television and the light. I want to go back because I want to see the ghost.

4:32

Presenter Good afternoon, and welcome to today's edition of Get Ready! Cook! And a big round of applause for today's contestants, Jack and Liz. Hello, Jack. So, do you like cooking?

Jack I love it. I cook dinner every evening at home.

Presenter How about you Liz?

Liz Yes, I'm the cook in my family too. I cook every day of course, but what I really like is cooking for friends at the weekend.

Presenter OK, so you know the rules. In the bag there are six ingredients, just six ingredients. You have an hour to cook three dishes, a starter, a main course, and a dessert. Apart from the ingredients in the bag you can also use basic ingredients like pasta, rice, eggs, sugar, salt, pepper, etc. OK? Are you ready? Let's open the bag. And today's ingredients are a chicken, some carrots, some onions, three oranges, some cream cheese, and some dark chocolate. OK, Jack and Liz. You have five minutes to decide what to make and then it's Get ready! Cook!

4:33

Presenter Liz and Jack, you have two more minutes, so I hope you're nearly ready. OK, time's up, stop cooking now, please. OK Jack, what did you make?

Jack For the starter there's carrot and orange soup, for the main course I made chicken breasts filled with cream cheese, and for dessert pancakes with chocolate sauce.

Presenter That looks delicious. And you Liz?

Liz I made a carrot and onion salad with orange dressing, then for the main course pasta with creamy chicken sauce and for dessert chocolate and orange mouse.

Presenter It looks good too. But now, the moment of truth. Let's taste your dishes...

4:34

Presenter Right Jack, let's try your soup. Mmm, that's delicious. It's a great combination, carrot and orange. Is there any onion in the soup?

Jack Yes, one onion.

Presenter It's very good, but next time maybe you could add a little cream, not much, just a little. OK, now the chicken. Mmm, that's lovely. Not very original, but very tasty. And finally the pancakes. They look beautiful... and they taste fantastic.

Now Liz, let's try your dishes. The salad first. Mmm, it's nice, but the taste of onion is very strong. How many onions did you use?

Liz Three.

Presenter I think perhaps two are enough for this salad. OK, the pasta. Mmm, it's very good but it needs a bit more salt and pepper. And finally the mousse. That's a beautiful mousse, Liz.

Liz Thank you.

Presenter Mmm, and it tastes fantastic, absolutely delicious. Well, congratulations to you both. I loved all your dishes – but only one of you can win – and today's winner is... Jack!

4:42

Comperes Question 1. What is the approximate population of the UK? Is it a) 2 million, b) 52 million, or c) 62 million?

Comperes c is the right answer! Question 2. How many calories are there in a Big Mac? Is it a) 670, b) 485, or c) 305?

Comperes a) is the right answer! Question 3. How far is it from New York City to Los Angeles? Is it a) about 4,000 km, b) about 2,500 km, or c) about 5,000 km?

Comperes b is the right answer! Question 4. Are you sure?

Comperes c is the right answer! Question 5. Yes, I'm sure.

Comperes a is the right answer!

4:45

Presenter Good evening. Welcome to Quiz Night. Tonight's show comes from Dublin. And our first contestant is Colleen from London. Hi Colleen. Are you nervous?

Colleen Yes, a bit.

Presenter Well, just try to relax. The rules are the same as always. I'm going to read you some sentences, and you have ten seconds to say if the sentence is true or false. If you get the first answer right, you win 500 euros. Then for each correct answer you double your money, so if you get the second answer right, you win 1,000 euros, and for the third correct answer you win 2,000 euros. For eight correct answers you win 64,000 euros. But if you get an answer wrong, you lose all the money. Remember you can also phone a friend, so if you're not sure about one of the answers, you can phone your friend to help you. Is that OK, Colleen?

Colleen Yes, OK.

4:46

Presenter OK Colleen, first question for 500 euros. The North Pole is colder than the South Pole. True or false?

Colleen The North Pole is colder than the South Pole. Er, false.

Presenter Correct. The South Pole is much colder, because it's much higher than the North Pole. In the summer the average temperature at the North Pole is zero degrees, but at the South Pole it's minus 26. Now, for 1,000 euros, carrots are sweeter than tomatoes. True or false?

Colleen Er, I think it's true.

Presenter Correct. Carrots are about five percent sugar, but tomatoes don't have any sugar at all. Right, for 2,000 euros a proton is heavier than an electron.

Colleen I think it's true.

Presenter Correct. A proton is more than 1,800 times heavier than an electron. Next, for 4,000 euros, The White House is bigger than Buckingham Palace. True or false?

Colleen The White House is bigger than Buckingham Palace. Er, false.

Presenter Correct. Buckingham Palace has 775 rooms, but the White House has only 132 rooms. Next, for 8,000 euros, oranges are healthier than strawberries. True or false?

Colleen Er, true. No, er, false.

Presenter Do you want to phone a friend?

Colleen No, I think it's false.

Presenter Correct. An orange has 70 milligrams of vitamin C, but a cup of strawberries, a normal serving, has 98. OK, for 16,000 euros, female mosquitoes are more dangerous than male mosquitoes.

Colleen Er, true.

Presenter Correct. Female mosquitoes are the ones that bite. Male mosquitoes don't bite. OK, Colleen, for 32,000 euros, in judo a green belt is better than a blue belt. True or false?

Colleen Er, I'm sure that's false. My brother does judo. False.

Presenter Correct. The order of belts in the lower stages of judo is white for a beginner, then yellow, orange, green, blue, brown, and black. And finally, the last question. Be very careful, Colleen. If you get it right, you win 64,000 euros, but if you get it wrong, you get nothing. Are you ready?

Colleen Yes, ready.
Daniel: So, Jenny, I hear it’s your birthday today.

Jenny: Yes, that’s right.

Daniel: Well, Happy Birthday! How do you normally celebrate?

Jenny: Oh, nothing special. Maybe I’ll go out for dinner with friends or see a movie.

Daniel: Well, we could go out somewhere, after dinner.

Waiter: Would you like a dessert?

Jenny: Not for me, thanks.

Waiter: Coffee?

Jenny: A decaf espresso.

Waiter: The same for me, please.

Waiter: Two decaffeinated espressos. Certainly, sir.

Daniel: You know, Jenny, you’ve got beautiful eyes.

Jenny: I get them from my mother. Anyway, what are your plans for the July edition of the magazine?

Daniel: The, er, July edition? I’m, um...

Jenny: I have to take this. Sorry.

Daniel: No problem.

Jenny: Hi, Barbara. Barbara: Jenny, just a quick call. We really like your idea about Rob Walker. He’s a great writer.

Jenny: So can I ask him?

Barbara: Yes. Go ahead.

Jenny: That’s great.

Barbara: Good luck, I hope he says yes.

Jenny: Me too.

Daniel: Good news?

Jenny: Er, yeah. That was Barbara my boss from the New York office. She just gave me a little birthday present.

Daniel: So, would you like to go somewhere else?

Jenny: I’m sorry, Daniel. I’m a little tired.

Daniel: Yes, of course. Waiter, could I have the bill, please?

Presenter: On today’s travel programme, Alan Marks is going to tell us about CouchSurfing, a new way of travelling. Alan, what exactly is CouchSurfing?

Alan: Well, CouchSurfing is an exciting and cheap way of travelling and seeing new places. It’s a very simple idea. When you visit another city, you stay in somebody’s flat or house. That person, the host, gives you a room and a bed, and if they don’t have a bed, then you can sleep on their couch, or sofa.

Presenter: Do you have to pay for the bed?

Alan: No, you don’t. It’s completely free. CouchSurfers usually take a small present for the host or maybe they can help with the housework or cook a meal. But you never pay any money.

Presenter: How do you find these people?

Alan: Well, there is a website called CouchSurfing.org. First, you go there and create a profile. Then you search for the city you want to visit and you look for people there who are offering a bed. When you find somebody you send them an email and then you can agree the day or days that you want to stay. The website is free.

Presenter: And do you have to offer a bed in your house?

Alan: No, nor if you don’t want to. You can just be a guest or you can be a host and offer a room in your house, or you can do both things. It’s up to you.

Presenter: Is CouchSurfing safe?

Alan: Yes, it is. You have a lot of information on the website about the person you are going to stay with. Every time a person stays with a host they write a report, either positive or negative and you can read all these reports. Also you can email the person before you go and ask any questions you like.

Presenter: Does the host usually show you their city?

Alan: Well, it depends on the person. Some hosts take their guests to see some of the sights, but others don’t. It depends when you visit too. Some hosts take their guests out at weekends, but are too busy during the week. But hosts usually recommend things to do, so you often see things which tourists don’t usually see.

Presenter: And can I CouchSurf all over the world?

Alan: Of course. In fact you can visit 230 countries and more than 70,000 cities.

Part 2

‘Well I have a problem with my boyfriend. We argue all the time. I’m not sure that he loves me. I want to know if we’re going to stay together.’ Please choose five cards, but don’t look at them.’ Jane took five cards. The fortune-teller put them on the table face down. He turned over the first card. ‘Ah, this is a good card. This means you’re going to be very lucky,’ ‘But am I going to stay with my boyfriend?’ Jane asked. ‘Maybe,’ said the fortune-teller. ‘We need to look at the other cards first.’

Part 3

The fortune-teller turned over a card with two rings. ‘Now I can see everything clearly. You are going to leave your boyfriend and go away with the other man, with Jim...to another country. And very soon you’re going to get married.’ Married? To Jim? But am I going to be happy with him? ‘You’re going to be very happy together. I’m sure of it.’ Jane looked at her watch. ‘Oh no, look at the time. I’m going to be late for work.’ She stood up, left a £5 note on the table, and ran out of the room.

One of the first things I noticed in Valencia is that people eat out a lot. They spend a lot of time in cafés and bars. You find people having...
breakfast, or tea, in a bar, not just lunch and dinner. People who work go out to a bar to have coffee, they don't have it in their office. In restaurants one thing that really surprised me was that when people go out in big groups, the men all sit at one end of the table and the women at the other.

Another thing I notice, maybe because I'm a woman myself, is that Spanish women are like, or Valencian women maybe. Of course I'm a foreigner, but I find that the women here talk very fast and very loudly, much more than the men. Women dress very well, especially older women, and they always look immaculate!

Finally, there's a myth that the Spanish don't work hard, but I don't think it's true, it's just that they work different hours. People have a long lunch break, but they finish work very late.

**Interviewer** Today, most people spend a lot of time every day online, but do men and women use the internet in the same way?

**Expert** Research shows that in general they use the internet in different ways. For example, men and women both use the internet to send emails, but men send more work emails, while women send more personal emails, to friends and family.

**Interviewer** What about online shopping?

**Expert** As you can imagine, women do more internet shopping than men. They often use online shops to buy things for the house, clothes, toys, and so on. Men, on the other hand prefer buying things on auction sites like eBay.

**Interviewer** Other sites are more popular with men?

**Expert** News sites like the BBC are more popular with men than with women. Men also like visiting sports sites where they can follow, for example, the football results. In general men use the internet a lot for fun. They download music and play games much more than women do.

**Interviewer** What do women do more than men?

**Expert** Well, women often use the internet to get information about health and medicine. And they are also more interested in websites which give them advice, for example websites which give advice about how to be good parents, or diet websites which help them to lose weight. They also use the internet for directions much more than men, they use websites like Google maps when they need to go somewhere new. And they use social networks like Facebook more than men do.

**Interviewer** Are there some things that both men and women do?

**Expert** Yes, they both use the internet to book tickets for trains and planes, and to book hotels. They also both use online banking, for example to pay bills or make transfers.

Sit on the sofa and watch a film. Actually, I think it's a great film.

2 Yes, The Empire Strikes Back, the second Star Wars film, was the fifth episode in the series. I've seen it about twenty times probably. It's my favourite film of all time, and when I meet a girl I always watch it with her. It's a kind of test. If she doesn't like the film, then I think that our relationship isn't going to work.

3 Yes, I have Flashdance. I've seen it oh, more than a hundred times. I absolutely love it. I love the music, and the film just makes me feel good. Whenever I feel a bit depressed I think, right, I'm going to watch Flashdance. It always makes me feel better. I've bought the DVD three times because after you've played a DVD a lot it doesn't work properly.

**Interviewer** Jess, so where are you going to take me for my birthday?

**Matt** I want to take you somewhere really nice. Have you been to The Peking Duck on 24th Street?

**Jess** On 24th Street. Yes, I have.

**Matt** Oh no! When did you go there?

**Jess** Last month. I went with some people from work.

**Matt** OK, somewhere else. Have you ever eaten in Appetito on 2nd Avenue? They make fantastic pasta.

**Jess** I know. I've been there twice. But we could go there. I love Italian food.

**Matt** No, listen. Why don't we go back to Luigi's? We had a lovely meal last time. Do you remember? The Italian waiter sang for you. It was so romantic!

**Jess** No, I don't remember.

**Matt** You don't?

**Jess** No, I don't remember because it wasn't me. I've never been to Luigi's.

**Matt** Oh, my bad memory again.

**Jess** So, who did you go there with? With your ex-girlfriend?

**Matt** No, no, I went there with my sister. Yes, with my sister.

**Jess** Your sister, huh? Let's forget it. I don't think I want to go out on my birthday.
1A present tense verb be, subject pronouns: I, you, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Full form</th>
<th>Contraction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am your teacher.</td>
<td>I'm your teacher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You are in room 7.</td>
<td>You're in room 7.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He is Mike.</td>
<td>He's Mike.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She is Hannah.</td>
<td>She's Hannah.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It is a school.</td>
<td>It's a school.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We are students.</td>
<td>We're students.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You are in Class 2.</td>
<td>You're in Class 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They are teachers.</td>
<td>They're teachers.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Always use a subject pronoun (you, he, etc.) with a verb, e.g. It's a school. NOT It is a school. They're teachers. NOT Are teachers.
- Always use capital I, e.g. He's Mike and I'm Sally. NOT I'm Sally. With other pronouns only use a capital letter when it’s the first word in a sentence.
- you = singular and plural.
- Use he for a man, she for a woman, and it for a thing.
- Use they for people and things.

**Contractions**
- In contractions ' = a missing letter, e.g. 'm = am.
- We use contractions in conversation and in informal writing, e.g. an email to a friend.

1B present tense verb be, and

I'm not American. (1 231)
She isn't from London.
They aren't Spanish.
Are you Polish? Yes, I am.
Is she Russian? No, she isn't.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Full form</th>
<th>Contraction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am not</td>
<td>I'm not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You are not</td>
<td>You aren't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/She/It is not</td>
<td>He/She/It isn't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We are not</td>
<td>We aren't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You are not</td>
<td>You aren't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They are not</td>
<td>They aren't</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Put not after the verb be to make negatives.
- You can also contract are not and is not like this: You're not Italian. She's not Spanish.

1C possessive adjectives: my, your, etc.

I'm Italian.
This is my classroom.
My family are from Rome.

You're in level 1.
His name is Michael.
This is your classroom.
Your name is Tina.

He's the director.
Her name is Michael.
It's a school.
Its name is Queen's School.

She's your teacher.
Our students are from many different countries.
Their names are David and Emma.

- his = of a man, her = of a woman, its = of a thing.
- their = of plural people or things.
- Possessive adjectives don't change with plural nouns.
  - our students NOT ours students
1A

a Complete with am, is, or are.

I am Mike.
1 We ______ from London.
2 He ______ early.
3 They ______ teachers.
4 Today ______ Wednesday.
5 I ______ sorry.
6 It ______ a hotel.
7 You ______ in room 402.
8 She ______ a student.
9 My name ______ Carla.
10 I ______ in a taxi.

b Write the sentences with contractions.

He is late.
1 It is Friday.
2 They are in school.
3 I am very well.
4 You are in my class.

He's late.
1 It's Friday.
2 They're in school.
3 I'm very well.
4 You're in my class.

c Write the sentences with a subject pronoun and a contraction.

Mike and Hannah are students. They're students.
1 John is in room 5.
2 Sam and I are early.
3 Julia is a teacher.
4 The school is in Madrid.

1B

a Write the sentences in the negative.

She's Australian. She isn't Australian.
1 I'm British.
2 They're Brazilian.
3 It's in South America.
4 You're French.

b Make questions and short answers.

1 Are you English? I am.
2 / you English? I am.
3 / my name? It's Carla.
4 / in room 10? Yes, I am.
5 / you sure? Yes, I am.

1C

a Complete the sentences with a possessive adjective.

My name’s Darly. I’m from Brazil.
1 The students are from Italy. Their names are Susanna and Tito.
2 She’s in my class. Her name is Rebecca.
3 We’re in class 2. His teacher is Richard.
4 London is famous for its parks.
5 How do you spell your surname, Anna?
6 This is my teacher. Her name is Brad.
7 I’m from London. My address is 31, Old Kent Road.
8 Sit down and open your books, please.
9 Laura is in my class. Her desk is near the window.
10 We’re from Liverpool. His surname is Connor.

b Circle the correct word.

Mark and Simon are friends. (They) Their are in class 2.
1 She’s a new student. She / Her name’s Ipek.
2 Is they / their teacher British?
3 My name’s Soraya. I’m in you / your class.
4 Where are you / your friends from?
5 We’re French. We / Our names are Marc and Jacques.
6 Is she / her German?
7 Peter is a teacher. He / His is from Ireland.
8 What’s he / his name?
9 I’m Karen. If / My surname is White.
10 She / Her is from Barcelona.
2A a/an, plurals; this/that/these/those

a/an, plurals

- It's a bag. (1 52)
- It's an umbrella.
- They're books.
- They're watches.

a/an (indefinite article)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>a</th>
<th>bag, pen, identity card, umbrella</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>an</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Use a/an with singular nouns.
- Use an with a noun beginning with a vowel (a, e, i, o, u).
- Use a with nouns beginning a when a = /ju:/, e.g. university.

regular plurals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Spelling</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a book</td>
<td>books</td>
<td>add -s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a key</td>
<td>keys</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a watch</td>
<td>watches</td>
<td>add -es after ch, sh, s, x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a box</td>
<td>boxes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a country</td>
<td>countries</td>
<td>consonant + y &gt; ies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a dictionary</td>
<td>dictionaries</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Add -s (or -es or -ies) to make plural nouns:
  - It's a pen. They're pens.
- Don't use a/an with plural nouns:
  - They're keys. NOT They're a keys.

irregular plurals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a man</td>
<td>men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a woman</td>
<td>women</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a child</td>
<td>children</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a person</td>
<td>people</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

this/that/these/those

1 What's this? It's a ticket.
   These watches are Japanese.
2 That car is Italian.
   What are those? They're headphones.

2B adjectives

1 The White House is in the USA.
   They're blue jeans.
2 He's strong.
   It isn't easy.
   Is it American?
3 It's a very big city.
   She's quite small.

2C imperatives, let's

1 Open the door. Turn right.
   Don't worry. Don't stop.
   Be quiet, please. Please sit down.
2 Let's go home. Let's wait.

1 When we use an adjective with a noun, the adjective goes before the noun:
   It's a big house. NOT It's a house big.
   Adjectives don't change before a plural noun: They're blue jeans.
   NOT They're blue jeans.
2 We can also use adjectives without a noun, after the verb be.
3 We often use very and quite before adjectives:
   a He's very tall.
   b He's quite tall.
   c He isn't very tall.

1 Use imperatives to give orders or instructions.
   • [+] imperatives = verb (infinitive). [-] imperatives = don't + verb (infinitive).
   • Add please to be polite: Open the door, please.
   • We often use be + adjective in imperatives: Be quiet, Be careful, etc.
   • Don't use a pronoun with imperatives: Be quiet.
2 Use Let's + verb (infinitive) to make suggestions.
   Use Let's not + verb to make a negative suggestion: Let's not wait.
2A

a Complete with a or an. Write the plural.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a photo</td>
<td>photos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 city</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 email</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 person</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 box</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 woman</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b Write sentences with It's or They're (and a or an if necessary).

- pen: It's a pen.
- buses: They're buses.
- children: __________
- purse: __________
- men: __________
- umbrella: __________
- sunglasses: __________

p.12

2B

a Underline the adjectives in these sentences.

He's a rich man.
1 They're Japanese tourists.
2 It's an international school.
3 That isn't the right answer.
4 We're good friends.
5 Hi, Anna. Nice to meet you.
6 Those animals are dangerous.
7 This is a big country.
8 My phone is very cheap.

b Put the words in the right order.

- is Chinese he? __________
- 1 a day very it's hot
- 2 your Australian is teacher?
- 3 car fast isn't that very
- 4 a idea bad it's
- 5 a are student you good?
- 6 easy is English quite
- 7 strong my is brother very
- 8 watch expensive is this an

p.14

2C

a Complete with a verb from the list. Use a [ ] or a □ imperative.

- be go have open park read speak take turn on worry

A It's hot. B Open the window.
A I'm very sorry. B Don't worry. It isn't a problem.
1 A I'm bored. B _________ the TV.
2 A No entiendo. B This is an English class. Please _________ Spanish.
3 A I'm tired. B It's late. _________ to bed.
4 A Is this book good? B No, it isn't. _________ it.
5 A I'm hungry. B _________ a sandwich.
6 A Look at those animals. B _________ careful. They're dangerous.
7 A It's raining. B _________ an umbrella.
8 A Where is our hotel? B It's over there. _________ here.

b Complete with Let's and a verb from the list.

close go open sit down stop turn off

- It's hot. Let's open the window.
1 Come on. _________
2 It's late. _________ the TV and go to bed.
3 I'm tired. _________
4 It's very cold in here. _________ the window.
5 There's a service station. _________ and have a coffee.

p.17
3A present simple + and -

British people like animals.
They live in houses with gardens.
My husband works from 9.00 to 5.00.
Ann has three children.

- We use the present simple for things that are generally true or that habitually happen.

3B present simple ?

Do you work in an office? No, I don't.
Does she work outside? Yes, she does.

- Use do (or does with he, she, it) to make questions.

3C word order in questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question word / phrase</th>
<th>Auxiliary</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>live near here?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where</td>
<td>does</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>live?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How many children</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>have?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What kind of music</td>
<td>does</td>
<td>she</td>
<td>like?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>spell your surname?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The word order for present simple questions with do and does is:
  ASI (Auxiliary, Subject, Infinitive), e.g. Do you live here?: OR
  QUASI (Question, Auxiliary, Subject, Infinitive), e.g. Where do you live?

- We often use question phrases beginning with What, e.g. What colour...?
  What size...? What make...? What time...?, etc.

- Contractions: don't = do not, doesn't = does not.
- To make negatives use don't (doesn't) + verb (infinitive):
  He doesn't work. NOT He doesn't works.

spelling rules for he / she / it

I work / play / live. He works / plays / lives.
I watch / finish / go / do. She watches / finishes / goes / does.
I study. She studies.

- The spelling rules for the he / she / it forms are the same as for the plurals (see Grammar Bank 2A p.126).

- The word order for present simple questions is ASI = Auxiliary verb (do, does), Subject (I, you, he, she, etc.), Infinitive (work, live, etc.).

Word order in be questions

Remember the word order in questions with be. Put be before the subject. Where are you from? What's your name? Is he Spanish?
3A  

a Change the sentences.  

My mum drinks tea.  
1 I go to the cinema.  
2 We live in a flat.  
3 She has two children.  
4 My dad doesn't like cats.  
5 The shops close at 5.30.  
6 We don't study French.  
7 I do housework.  
8 I want a guitar.  
9 I don't work on Saturdays.  
10 Our lessons finish at 5 o'clock.  

b Complete the sentences with a + or - verb.  

eat  have  listen  play  read  speak  study  work  

+ They study economics.  
1 They + in an office.  
2 Eva + books in English.  
3 You + Arabic very well.  
4 I + games on my phone.  
5 Paolo + glasses.  
6 We + to music on the bus.  
7 They + fast food.  
8 Julia + two children.  

p.20

3B  

a Complete the questions with do or does.  

Do you work with a computer?  
1 + she have any qualifications?  
2 + you speak a foreign language?  
3 + Jamie play the guitar?  
4 + you like Italian food?  
5 + you study another language?  
6 + school children wear a uniform?  
7 + your dad cook?  
8 + people in your country work long hours?  

b Make questions.  

A She works at night.  

B Does she work at the weekend?  
A I don't play the guitar.  

B Do you play the piano?  
A He likes sport.  

B + tennis?  
2 A She speaks foreign languages.  

B + German?  
3 A I don't eat fast food.  

B + pizzas?  
4 A They cook Italian food.  

B + lasagne?  
5 A Teresa doesn't live in a flat.  

B + in a house?  
6 A I want a new phone.  

B + an iPhone?  
7 A My dad drives a Ferrari.  

B + fast?  

p.22

3C  

a Order the words to make questions.  

you live where do?  Where do you live?  
1 phones how many do you have?  
2 interesting is job it an?  
3 you drink how do coffee much?  
4 brother your where from is?  
5 you with work computers do?  
6 read of what do kind you magazines?  
7 do what does weekend he at the?  
8 want you do drink another?  
9 your where does sister live?  
10 do how that you say English in?  

b Complete the questions.  

What's your name? My name's Andrew.  
1 How many children + Three, two girls and a boy.  
2 What kind of films + He likes science-fiction films.  
3 Where + We're from New York.  
4 What + your father + He's a lawyer.  
5 What kind of food + I like Japanese food.  
6 Where + She works in an office.  
7 Where + Our flat is near the market.  
8 How many foreign languages + I speak French and Spanish.  
9 When + to the gym? I go on Mondays, Wednesdays, and Fridays.  
10 How old + I'm 21.  

p.25
4A Whose...? possessive 's

1. He's George Clooney's father. 
   It's James's house.
2. They're my parents' friends.
3. Whose is this bag? It's Maria's.
4. The end of the film is fantastic. I live in the city centre.

1. We use 's with a person to talk about family and possessions: 
   George Clooney's mother NOT the mother of George Clooney
2. We use 's not 's with regular plural nouns, e.g. 
   They're my parents' friends. NOT They're my parent's friends.
- With irregular plural nouns, e.g. children, men, use 's: 
  the children's room, men's clothes.

4B prepositions: (at, in, on, to)

Time

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>in</th>
<th>on</th>
<th>at</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the morning</td>
<td>the evening</td>
<td>the summer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the afternoon</td>
<td>the evening</td>
<td>the summer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monday</td>
<td>Tuesday (morning)</td>
<td>three o'clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>midday / midnight</td>
<td>lunchtime</td>
<td>night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the weekend</td>
<td>the weekend</td>
<td>Christmas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We use in for parts of the day and seasons.
- We use on for days.
- We use at for times of the day, night, the weekend, and festivals.

Other uses of in and on

- We also use in with months and years, e.g. in December, In 2015
- We also use on with dates, e.g. on 1 January

(May 31)

Movement and place

1. He goes to work at 8.00.
2. He has lunch at work.

He works in an office.

1. We use to for movement or direction: She goes to the gym.
   NOT She goes at the gym.
2. We don't use to before home: go home NOT go to home
3. We use at and in for position:
   - We use at + work, home, school, university.
   - We use in + other places: a flat, an office, a room, etc.
   - We can use in or at with some public places: a restaurant, the cinema, etc.
   - On Saturdays he usually has lunch in/at a restaurant.

4C adverbs and expressions of frequency

1. I always have toast for breakfast.
   Do you usually go to work by bus? 
   She doesn't often go to the cinema.
   They're sometimes late.
   She hardly ever watches TV.
   He is never stressed.

2. I have English classes twice a week.
   She doesn't work every day.

1. We use adverbs of frequency to say how often you do something.
   - Adverbs of frequency go before all main verbs (except be).
     after be.
   - Use a [+ verb with never and hardly ever. He never smokes.
     NOT He doesn't never smoke.
   - In negative sentences the adverb of frequency goes before don't | doesn't
     and the verb.

2. Expressions of frequency usually go at the end of a sentence or verb phrase.
4A

a) Circle the correct form.

Monica Cruz is Penelope Cruz's sister / sister's Penelope Cruz.
1. It's my mother's birthday / my birthday's mother.
2. That's her house's parents / her parents' house.
3. I'm tired when I go home at the end of the day / the day's end.
4. Those are friends' my sister / my sister's friends.
5. That's Anne's bag / Anne's bag.
6. Those are the students' desks / the student's desks.

b) Look at the pictures. Answer the questions with a short sentence.

Who's is the laptop? It's Bill's.
1. Whose are the cars?
2. Whose is the wallet?
3. Whose are the magazines?
4. Whose is the watch?
5. Whose are the glasses?

4C

a) Put the adverb or expression of frequency in the right place.

They drive – they don't have a car. never
They never drive – they don’t have a car.
1. Do you wear glasses? usually
2. I'm bored. hardly ever
3. She does housework. sometimes
4. We go to the cinema. once a week
5. Why are you late? always
6. I walk to work. every day
7. My girlfriend is stressed. never
8. Does it rain in the winter? often

b) Order the words to make sentences.

always she at six up gets
She always gets up at six.
1. for late never I am class
2. eat ever fast hardly we food
3. what work you usually time do finish ?
4. parents radio often the my listen don't to
5. always brother lunchtime is my hungry at
6. don't homework always our we do
7. you work everyday to do drive ?
8. hardly teacher angry is our ever
5A  can / can't

1. I can sing, but I can't dance.
2. I can come on Tuesday, but I can't come on Wednesday.
3. You can park here. You can't park there.
4. Can you help me? Can I open the window?

- *can* + infinitive has different meanings:
  1. I *can* = I know how to.
   I can't = I don't know how to.
  2. I *can* = It's possible for me.
   I can't = It's impossible for me.
  3. You *can* = It's OK / It's permitted.
   You can't = It's not OK / It's not permitted.
  4. Can you ...? = Please do it.
   Can I ...? = Is it OK if I do it?

- *can* and *can't* are the same for all persons (I, you, he, etc.). NOT He can:
- Contraction: *can't* = *cannot*.
- Don't use to after *can*.
  I can swim. NOT I can to swim.

5B  present continuous: be + verb + -ing

They're having a party in Flat 4.
Oh no! The baby's crying.
It's raining.
A What are you doing?
B I'm waiting for my brother.

- We use the present continuous for things that are happening now / at the moment.
- We also use the present continuous with longer periods of time, e.g. today, this week.
  I'm working at home this week because my daughter's not very well.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I'm</th>
<th>You're</th>
<th>I'm not</th>
<th>You aren't</th>
<th>He/She/It's</th>
<th>He/She/It isn't</th>
<th>We're</th>
<th>We aren't</th>
<th>They're</th>
<th>They aren't</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>having a party.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

spelling rules for the -ing form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>verb + -ing</th>
<th>spelling</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cook</td>
<td>cooking</td>
<td>add -ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>study</td>
<td>studying</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dance</td>
<td>dancing</td>
<td>e + -ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shop</td>
<td>shopping</td>
<td>one vowel + one consonant = double consonant + -ing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5C  present simple or present continuous?

present simple

My sister works in a bank.
What do you usually wear to work?
It rains a lot here in the spring.

- We use the present simple to say what we *usually* do, or things that are normally true.
- We often use the present simple with adverbs and expressions of frequency, e.g. always, often, once a week, etc.
- We use the present continuous to say what is happening now.

present continuous

Today she's working at home.
What are you wearing now?
Look! It's raining.

- We often use the present continuous with *at the moment, today, this week.*

What do you do? or What are you doing?

A What do you do? (= What's your job?)
B I'm a teacher.
A What are you doing? (= now, at the moment)
B I'm waiting for a friend.
5A
a. Rewrite the sentences using the correct form of can or can't.
1. I know how to play the piano. I can play the piano.
2. She_______to meet me after work.
3. Please open the door.
4. My boyfriend knows how to ski.
5. Is it okay if I use your car?
6. It's not possible for us to come to your party.

b. Complete the sentences with can or can't and the verbs.
1. She_______French, but not Spanish. (speak)
2._______you_______me? These bags are very heavy. (help)
3. I_______you tonight. I'm very busy. (see)
4. I_______the window? It's cold in here. (close)
5._______you_______your address, please? (repeat)
6. It says 'No parking'. We_______here. (stop)
7. Andy doesn't want to go to the beach because he_______swim. (swim)
8. I_______your phone? I want to call my dad. (use)

5B
a. Write a question and answer.

1. What's she doing?
2. She's crying.
3. _______
4. _______
5. _______

b. Put the verbs in brackets in the present continuous.
A (On the telephone) Hi, Frank. It's Tina.
B Hello, Tina. It's good to hear from you. Where are you?
A I'm here in Bristol. I'm on holiday so I'm visiting (visit) my parents.
B I________(stay) with them all this week. They're retired. Right now they________(work) in the garden and I________(sit) in the sun. And you, Frank? What________you________these days? (do)
B I________(look) for a job.
A Good luck! What about your parents. How are they?
B Fine. My mum________(learn) to drive! She________(not enjoy) it much because she's very nervous. At the moment she________(make) the dinner and my dad________(help) her.
A It's great to speak to you, Frank. Can we meet?
B Yes. Let's have dinner tonight.

5C
a. Circle the correct form.
1. A What do you cook/are you cooking? I'm really hungry.
2. A Hello. Is Martin at home?
3. A Do your parents live/are your parents living near here?
4. A How often do you go/are you going to the hairdresser's?
5. A Don't make a noise! Your father sleeps/is sleeping!
6. A He's OK. He doesn't usually sleep/isn't usually sleeping in the afternoon.

b. Put the verbs in brackets in the present simple or continuous.
1. A Hi, Sarah! What_______you_______here? (do)
2. A Let's have lunch._______you_______hamburgers? (like)
3. A Listen! The neighbours_______a party again. (have)
4. A What_______your boyfriend_______? (do)
5. A Hi, Lisa. Where_______you_______? (go)
6. A To the gym. I________to the gym every evening. (go)
6A object pronouns: me, you, him, etc.

- Pronouns take the place of nouns.
- We use **subject** pronouns when the noun is the subject of a verb (i.e. the person who does the action): **John** is a doctor. **He** lives in London.
- We use **object** pronouns when the noun is the object of a verb (i.e. the person who receives the action): **Anna** meets **John**. She invites **him** to a concert.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject pronoun</th>
<th>object pronoun</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>Can you help <strong>me</strong>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>I know <strong>you</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>him</td>
<td>She isn’t in love with <strong>him</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>He phones <strong>her</strong> every day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>I don’t like <strong>it</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>Wait for <strong>us</strong>!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>them</td>
<td>Call <strong>them</strong> this evening.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

6B like (+ verb + -ing)

- We use verb + -ing after like, love, don’t mind, and hate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb + -ing</th>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>spelling</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>love shopping</td>
<td>cooking</td>
<td>add -ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I like going to the cinema</td>
<td>studying</td>
<td>e + -ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don’t mind getting up early</td>
<td>dancing</td>
<td>one vowel + one consonant = double consonant + -ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don’t like doing housework</td>
<td>shopping</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I hate driving at night</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6C be or do?

**be**

1. Hi. I’m Jim. She isn’t very friendly. **Are** you German?
2. I can’t talk. I’m driving. They aren’t working today. Is it raining?

**do**

1. **Do** you speak English? Where **do** they live? They don’t have children.
2. **Does** your sister have a job? What **does** your father do? Alan doesn’t like jazz.

**Example:**

- We use *do* / *does* and *don’t* / *doesn’t* to make questions and negatives in the present simple.
- Remember ASI and QUASI (See Grammar Bank 3C p.128).
6A

a Change the highlighted words to object pronouns.

1 I call my mother once a week.
   I call __________ once a week.

2 I can't find my wallet.
   I can't find __________.

3 She speaks to her father in German.
   She speaks to __________ in German.

4 He meets his friends after work.
   He meets __________ after work.

5 Can you help my friend and me?
   Can you help __________ and __________?

6 Ivan is in love with his girlfriend.
   Ivan is in love with __________.

6B

b Complete the sentences with a subject pronoun (I, he, etc.) or object pronoun (me, him, etc.).

1 Susan has a big flat. __________ likes __________ a lot. We often visit __________ on Sundays because she invites __________ for lunch.

2 I am very happy with my neighbours. __________ often help __________ with my children. They often take __________ to school when I'm working.

3 Mark loves Ruth but she doesn't love __________. He calls __________ every day but __________ doesn't want to speak to __________.

4 My brother has two dogs. __________ takes __________ for a walk twice a day. I don't like __________ very much because __________ bark at __________.

5 We often take my grandfather some magazines, but __________ never reads __________. __________ watches TV all day and never turns __________ off.

6C

b Write the -ing form of the verbs in the chart.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>work</th>
<th>cooking</th>
<th>dancing</th>
<th>eating</th>
<th>running</th>
<th>sleeping</th>
<th>stopping</th>
<th>studying</th>
<th>swimming</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>work</td>
<td>cooking</td>
<td>dancing</td>
<td>eating</td>
<td>running</td>
<td>sleeping</td>
<td>stopping</td>
<td>studying</td>
<td>swimming</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

He loves working in an office.

b Complete the dialogues with do | does or am | is | are.

A Do you speak German? B Yes, but I don't speak it very well.

1 A Where ________ Gemma going? B She ________ going to the gym.

2 A ________ you live in a house? B Yes, but it ________ have a garden.

3 A ________ Matt like shopping? B He ________ mind it.

4 A Why ________ you crying? B Because I ________ feeling sad.

5 A ________ your boyfriend cook? B Yes. He ________ making dinner now.

6 A ________ you busy? B Yes. We ________ doing our homework.

7 A How old ________ your father? B He's 66, but he ________ want to retire.

8 A ________ you watching TV? B No, I ________ playing a video game.
7A past simple of be: was / were

King Edward VIII's wife was American.
She wasn't in class yesterday. Was she ill?
The Beatles were famous in the 1960s.
Where were you last night? You weren't at home.

- We use was / were to talk about the past.
- We often use was / were with past time expressions, e.g. yesterday, last night, in 1945, etc.
- We use was / were with born: I was born in Hungary.

7B past simple: regular verbs

I played tennis this morning.
We watched a good film on TV last night.
My grandfather lived in Vienna when he was young.
I studied German when I was at school.

- We use the past simple for finished actions in the past.

| spelling rules for regular verbs |
| infinitive | past | spelling |
| watch | watched | add -ed |
| play | played | add -ed |
| live | lived | add -d |
| stop | stopped | one vowel + one consonant = double consonant |
| study | studied | consonant + y > ied |

- Contraction: didn't = did not.
- Regular verbs in the past end in -ed, e.g. worked, lived, played.
- The past simple is the same for all persons (I, you, she, etc.).
- Use auxiliaries did | didn't + infinitive for past simple.

7C past simple: irregular verbs

I went to Spain last month.
I didn't go to Madrid.
Did you go to Barcelona?

- Use the irregular past forms only in sentences:
  I saw a film last night.
- Use the infinitive after did | didn't:
  Did you see a film last night? NOT Did you saw...?
  I didn't go out last night. NOT I didn't went...?
- Remember word order in questions = ASI (Auxiliary, Subject, Infinitive), e.g. Did you go out last night? or QUASI (Question word, Auxiliary, Subject, Infinitive), e.g. Where did you go?
- There is a list of irregular verbs on page 165.

could
Past of can = could.
☐ = couldn't NOT didn't can
☐ = Could you...? NOT Did you can...?
### 7A

**a** Complete the past simple sentences with was/wasn't or were/weren't.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present simple</th>
<th>Past simple</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>My father's a painter.</td>
<td>My grandfather was a painter, too.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Today is Monday.</td>
<td>Yesterday I was Sunday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where are you now?</td>
<td>Where were you yesterday?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm in Italy.</td>
<td>I was in Germany last month.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is it hot today?</td>
<td>It was hot yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The café isn't open now.</td>
<td>It was open this morning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My neighbours aren't at home.</td>
<td>They were at home yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We're in Rome now.</td>
<td>We were in Venice yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They're tired.</td>
<td>They were tired last week.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**b** Complete the dialogues with was, wasn't, were, or weren't.

A: Were you and Charlie at the concert last night?
B: Yes, we _were_.
A: 2 Was it good?
B: No, it _wasn't_. The singer _wasn't_ terrible.
A: 5 Were the tickets expensive?
B: Yes, they _were_.
A: Where _were_ your mother born?
B: She _was born_ in Argentina in 1955.
A: 9 Were her parents Australian?
B: No, they _weren't_. Her father _was_ German and her mother _was_ from Italy.

< p.52

### 7B

**a** Rewrite the sentences in the past simple with yesterday.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I watch TV.</td>
<td>I watched TV yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 We study English.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Do you listen to the news?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 He doesn't cook dinner.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Does she play sport?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 They work late.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 I use the internet at work.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 She chats to her friends.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 My brother doesn't dance.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**b** Complete the sentences with a verb in the past simple.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>not call</th>
<th>cry</th>
<th>dance</th>
<th>finish</th>
<th>not listen</th>
<th>play</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We finished work late yesterday.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I <em>finished</em> work on her birthday.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The film was very sad.</td>
<td><em>finished</em> you <em>write</em>?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My brother <em>watched</em> video games all day yesterday.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 I <em>watched</em> to the news this morning because I was late.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 <em>watched</em> Sarah <em>watched</em> with Martin at the party?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

< p.54

### 7C

**a** Complete the text with the verbs in brackets in the past simple.

Last weekend, I _went_ (go) to London with some friends. We _met_ (meet) at the train station at 7:30 a.m. Our train _left_ (leave) at 7:45 a.m. In the morning, we _bought_ (buy) some souvenirs. Then, we _ate_ (have) lunch in an Italian restaurant. In the evening, we _saw_ (see) a Shakespeare play at the Globe Theatre. We _came_ (get) home very late that night. We all _felt_ (feel) very tired but very happy.

**b** Complete the questions in the past simple.

Did you go out last night? Yes, I did.
1 What _did_ you _wear_ yesterday? I wore jeans.
2 Where _did_ your friends? We met in a café.
3 What time _did_ you _get_ home late.
4 How _did_ you _go_ home? We went home by taxi.
5 Did you have a good time? Yes, we had a great time.

**c** Correct the information using the word in brackets.

They got home at midnight. (11 p.m.)

They _didn't_ get home at midnight. They _got_ home at 11.

1 She wore a red dress. (blue)
2 I left work early. (late)
3 We went by train. (bus)
4 He lost his mobile phone. (wallet)
5 You had a sandwich. (salad)

< p.57
8A past simple: regular and irregular verbs

1 be
- I was born in Japan. They were late for class yesterday.
- She wasn’t at home last night. You weren’t very nice to her.
- Were you ill yesterday? When was he born?

2 regular verbs
- I really liked the present. She wanted to be a doctor.
- She didn’t enjoy the concert. They didn’t arrive until very late.
- Did you watch the match last night? When did you finish the book?

3 irregular verbs
- I went to Paris last summer. She slept on the sofa.
- He didn’t come home last night. They didn’t hear the music.
- Did you speak to your sister yesterday? Where did you have lunch?

8B there is / there are, some / any + plural nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>There’s a garage.</td>
<td>There are some pictures on the wall.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There isn’t a swimming pool.</td>
<td>There aren’t any plants in the room.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is there a bathroom downstairs?</td>
<td>Are there any neighbours with children?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, there is.</td>
<td>Yes, there are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No, there isn’t.</td>
<td>No, there aren’t.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

there is / there are
- We use there is / there are to say that somebody or something exists. We use there is + a singular noun and there are + plural nouns.
- There is is often contracted to There’s. There are is not usually contracted.
- When we talk about a list of things we use there is if the first word in the list is singular or there are if the first word in the list is plural:
  - In my bedroom there’s a bed, two chairs, and a desk.
  - In the living room there are two armchairs and a sofa.

8C there was / there were

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>There was an old TV.</td>
<td>There were only three guests.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There wasn’t a remote control.</td>
<td>There weren’t any more people.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Was there a ghost?</td>
<td>Were there any windows?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, there was.</td>
<td>Yes, there were.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No, there wasn’t.</td>
<td>No, there weren’t.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- there was / were is the past of there is / are.
8A

a Complete the dialogue using the past simple of the verbs in brackets.
A Where were (be) you last night at 8.00?
B 1________ (be) at home, Inspector. With my wife. We
2________ (be) at home all evening.
A What 3________ you (do)?
B We 4________ (watch) TV and then we 5________ (have) a light dinner. We 6________ (not be) hungry. After that, we 7________ (go) to bed.
A What time 8________ you (go) to bed?
B About 10 o'clock.
A 9________ you (hear) a noise during the night?
B No, I 10________ (not hear) anything.

b Complete the text with the past simple of the verbs in brackets.
Last night I 1________ (be) asleep in my room when a strange noise 4________ (wake) me up. I 2________ (not want) to leave my room because I 3________ (feel) very scared. Then I 4________ (hear) the noise again, so I 5________ (decide) to go and investigate. When I 6________ (turn on) the light in the kitchen, a bird 7________ (fly) out of the window. I 8________ (close) the window so that the bird 9________ (not can) come in again and then I 10________ (go) back to bed.

p.61

8B

a Complete with [ ] or [ ] of There's or There are.
There's a dishwasher in the kitchen.
Are there any people in the room?
1________ any books on the shelf?
2________ a toilet downstairs?
3________ some stairs over there.
4________ a carpet on the floor.
5________ some pictures on the wall.
6________ a shower in the bathroom?
7________ some chairs in the garden.
8________ a lamp in the bedroom?
9________ a motorbike in the garage.
10________ any glasses in the cupboard?

b Write [ ], [ ], or [ ] sentences with there is / are + a / an, some or any.

[ ] trees / the garden  There are some trees in the garden.
1 __________ table / the kitchen ____________________________
2 __________ fireplace / the living room ______________________
3 __________ plants / your flat ______________________________
4 __________ people / the hall ______________________________
5 __________ pictures / your bedroom _________________________
6 __________ TV / the kitchen ________________________________
7 __________ computer / the study __________________________
8 __________ chairs / the dining room ________________________
9 __________ mirror / the bathroom _________________________
10 __________ car / the garage ______________________________

p.63

8C

a Complete the dialogue with the correct form of there was or there were.
A How many guests 1________ in the hotel?
B 2________ four including me. 3________ two businessmen.
A 4________ a restaurant?
B No, 5________, but 6________ a bar.
A 7________ a minibar in your room?
B Yes, 8________ but 9________ any drinks in it.
A How many beds 10________?
B One. A double bed.

b Complete the sentences with there was / were / wasn't / weren't + a / an, or some / any.

There were some ghosts in the haunted castle I stayed in.
1 My sister didn't have a shower because 2________ spider in the bath.
2 We couldn't watch the news because 3________ TV in our room.
3 I couldn't sleep on the plane because 4________ noisy children behind me.
4 They couldn't play tennis because 5________ tennis balls.
5 She didn't have a coffee because 6________ cups.
6 He took a photo because 7________ beautiful view.
7 They couldn't park near the restaurant because 8________ car park.
8 I couldn't work in the hotel because 9________ computer.

p.65
9

9A countable / uncountable nouns

- There are two kinds of noun in English; countable (C) and uncountable (U).
  - C = things you can count, e.g. apples. C nouns can be singular (an apple) or plural (apples).
  - U = things you can’t count.
  - Some nouns can be C or U but the meaning is different.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>countable</th>
<th>uncountable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We need</td>
<td>an apple</td>
<td>some butter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>some apples</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We don’t need</td>
<td>a tomato</td>
<td>any rice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>any tomatoes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do we need</td>
<td>an orange?</td>
<td>any sugar?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>any oranges?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
- We use a/an with singular C nouns; a/an = one.
- We use some with plural C nouns and with U nouns; some = not an exact number or quantity.
- We use any in and with plural C nouns and with U nouns.

9B quantifiers: how much / how many, a lot of, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>uncountable</th>
<th>short answers</th>
<th>full answers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>How much sugar do you eat?</td>
<td>A lot.</td>
<td>I eat a lot of sugar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Quite a lot.</td>
<td>I eat quite a lot of sugar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A little.</td>
<td>I eat a little sugar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Not much.</td>
<td>I don’t eat much sugar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>None.</td>
<td>I don’t eat any sugar.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>countable (plural)</th>
<th>short answers</th>
<th>full answers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>How many sweets do you eat?</td>
<td>A lot.</td>
<td>I eat a lot of sweets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Quite a lot.</td>
<td>I eat quite a lot of sweets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A few.</td>
<td>I eat a few sweets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Not many.</td>
<td>I don’t eat many sweets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>None.</td>
<td>I don’t eat any sweets.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
- We use How much...? with uncountable (U) nouns and How many...? with plural countable (C) nouns.
- We use: a lot (of) with C and U nouns for a big quantity.
  - quite a lot (of) for a medium quantity.
  - a little/not...much with U nouns for a small quantity.
  - a few/not...many with C plural nouns for a small quantity.
  - not...any (none in short answers) for zero quantity.

a lot of and much / many
- In [ ] sentences we usually use a lot of.
- In [ ] sentences and [ ] we usually use much and many: I don’t drink much water. Do you drink much coffee?
- It is also possible to use a lot of in [ ] and [ ]: Do you drink a lot of coffee? I don’t eat a lot of vegetables.

9C comparative adjectives

Is your sister older than you?  
Buckingham Palace is bigger than the White House.
Female mosquitoes are more dangerous than males.
My new job is better than my old one.
The traffic is always worse in the evening.

- Use comparative adjectives + than to compare two things, people, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>comparative</th>
<th>one-syllable adjectives: add -er</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>old cheap</td>
<td>older cheaper</td>
<td>adjectives ending one vowel + one consonant: double consonant, add -er</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big hot</td>
<td>bigger hotter</td>
<td>one- or two-syllable adjectives ending consonant + y &gt; -ier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dry healthy</td>
<td>drier healthier</td>
<td>two- or more syllable adjectives: more + adjective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>famous expensive</td>
<td>more famous more expensive</td>
<td>irregular</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GRAMMAR BANK

9A

a Write a, an, or some + a food / drink word.

1 2 3 4 5 6

b Complete the dialogue with a, an, some, or any.

A What can we cook for your brother and his girlfriend?
B Let’s make  a lasagne.
A Good idea. Are there 1 onions?
B Yes. And there are 6 tomatoes, too.
A Great!
B Oh no! There isn’t 3 pasta!
A Oh. Wait a minute. I bought 4 fish yesterday. Are there 5 potatoes?
B Yes, there are.
A Good. So we can have fish and chips. Do we have 6 fruit?
B Yes. I think we have 7 oranges. Why?
A You can make 8 fruit salad for dessert. There’s 9 apple and 10 bananas, too.
B OK. Let’s start cooking.

9B

a Complete with How much / How many.

How much sugar do you put in your tea?
1 2 3 4 5 6

b Circle the correct word or phrase.

I don’t put (much | many) salt on my food.
1 We don’t eat a lot of / a lot sweets.
3 My friends don’t drink much / many coffee.
4 A How much fruit do you buy? B Quite a lot / Quite a lot of.
5 We eat a lot of / much fish. We love it!
7 Donna ate her hamburger, but she didn’t eat much / many chips.
8 A How many vegetables do you eat? B Any / None. I don’t like them.
9 I have a cup of tea and a few / a little cereal for breakfast.
10 A Do you eat much / many meat? B No, I don’t eat no / any meat. I’m a vegetarian.

9C

a Write the comparative form of these adjectives.

big bigger
1 high
2 dirty
3 dangerous
4 good
5 thin
6 slow
7 healthy
8 far
9 comfortable
10 bad

b Complete with a comparative adjective + than.

My sister is younger than me. She’s only 18. (young)
1 The market is cheaper than the supermarket for vegetables. (cheap)
2 Italian is easier than Spanish for English students. (easy)
3 It rains a lot in the spring. April is wetter than July (wet)
4 This restaurant is busier than when it first opened. (busy)
5 Come in the summer. The weather is hotter than in the spring. (good)
6 I love science. I find it more interesting than history. (interesting)
7 Milan is further from the sea than Rome. (far)
8 I’m taller than my brother. He’s very tall. (short)
9 The situation is worse than it was last year. (bad)
10 Skiing is harder than I thought it was. (difficult)
**10A** superlative adjectives

It's the **hottest** month of the year.
It's the **most** dangerous road in the world.
She's the **best** student in the class.
Monday is the **worst** day of the week.

- Use the + superlative adjective to say which is the (biggest, etc.) in a group.
- After superlatives, we use in (not of) + places, e.g. the world, the class.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>comparative</th>
<th>superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cold</td>
<td>colder</td>
<td>the coldest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>high</td>
<td>higher</td>
<td>the highest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big</td>
<td>bigger</td>
<td>the biggest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hot</td>
<td>hotter</td>
<td>the hottest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dry</td>
<td>drier</td>
<td>the driest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunny</td>
<td>sunnier</td>
<td>the sunniest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dangerous</td>
<td>more dangerous</td>
<td>the most dangerous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>better</td>
<td>the best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad</td>
<td>worse</td>
<td>the worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>far</td>
<td>further</td>
<td>the furthest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**10B** be going to (plans)

I'm going to have a holiday next month.
I'm not going to study English.
Are you going to have a holiday too?

**chart**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>full form</th>
<th>contraction</th>
<th>going to</th>
<th>have a holiday next month. study English tonight.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am</td>
<td>I'm</td>
<td>going to</td>
<td>study English tonight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You are</td>
<td>You’re</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He / She / It is</td>
<td>I’m</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We are</td>
<td>We’re</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They are</td>
<td>They’re</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I am not</td>
<td>I’m not</td>
<td>going to</td>
<td>study English tonight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You are not</td>
<td>You aren’t</td>
<td></td>
<td>Study English tonight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He / She / it is not</td>
<td>I’m not</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We are not</td>
<td>We aren’t</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They are not</td>
<td>They aren’t</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**chart**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Am I</th>
<th>Are you</th>
<th>Is he / she / it</th>
<th>Are we</th>
<th>Are you</th>
<th>going to have a holiday next month. study English tonight.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Am I</td>
<td>Are you</td>
<td>Is he / she / it</td>
<td>Are we</td>
<td>Are you</td>
<td>going to have a holiday next month. study English tonight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I am.</td>
<td>I am.</td>
<td>I am.</td>
<td>I am.</td>
<td>I am.</td>
<td>have a holiday next month. study English tonight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes,</td>
<td>Yes,</td>
<td>Yes,</td>
<td>Yes,</td>
<td>Yes,</td>
<td>have a holiday next month. study English tonight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No,</td>
<td>No,</td>
<td>No,</td>
<td>No,</td>
<td>No,</td>
<td>have a holiday next month. study English tonight.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We use going to + verb (infinitive) to talk about future plans.
- We often use future time expressions with going to:
  - tomorrow, next week, next year, etc.

**10C** be going to (predictions)

- We can use be going to + verb (infinitive) to make predictions (= to say what you think or can see is going to happen in the future).

I think it's going to rain.
You're going to be very happy.
I'm sure they're going to win.
10A

a Write the opposite.

   the smallest        the biggest
1 the coldest
2 the most expensive
3 the best
4 the most difficult
5 the driest
6 the shortest
7 the nearest
8 the cleanest

b Complete the sentences with a superlative. Use the adjectives in brackets.

   The tigers are the most dangerous animals in the zoo. (dangerous)
   1 Our house is ________ house in the street. (big)
   2 For me, Saturday is ________ day of the week. (good)
   3 My bedroom is ________ room in our house. (small)
   4 July is ________ month in my country. (hot)
   5 My neighbours upstairs are ________ people in the world. (noisy)
   6 ________ driver in my family is my dad. (bad)
   7 Sophie is ________ student in our English class. (young)
   8 ________ building in my town is the castle. (beautiful)

10B

a Complete the sentences with the correct form of be going to and the verb in brackets.

   She doesn't have a car. She's going to travel by train. (travel)
   1 We need a holiday. We ________ a hotel near the beach. (book)
   2 Tomorrow is Saturday. I ________ in bed. (stay)
   3 My sister wants to be a doctor. She ________ medicine. (study)
   4 Laura and David are in love. They ________ married. (get)
   5 Ian is busy. He ________ late tonight. (work)
   6 Their house isn't very tidy. They ________ the housework this afternoon. (do)
   7 It's raining. We ________ an umbrella. (take)
   8 I have a problem at work. I ________ to my boss. (speak)

b Complete the sentences with be going to + a verb.

   not buy call not come eat
go not see sleep watch

   I'm staying with a friend. I'm going to sleep on the couch.
   1 I need to talk to my mum. I ________ her tonight.
   2 There isn't any food. What ________ we ________?
   3 My friend is ill. She ________ to the party.
   4 They don't have any money. They ________ any new clothes.
   5 Germany are playing England. ________ you ________ the match?
   6 Our friends are away. We ________ them this week.
   7 The children are tired. They ________ to bed.

10C

a Write predictions for the pictures.

   A be catch make play send
   B the bus an email a nice day an omelette tennis

   He's going to play tennis.
   1 ________
   2 ________
   3 ________
   4 ________

b Complete the predictions with be going to and a verb.

   be break not finish forget have
   not like not pass tell win

   I'm a fortune teller. I'm going to tell you about your future.
   1 You're driving very fast! I'm sure we ________ an accident!
   2 She's a very bad student. She ________ the exam.
   3 Be careful with that glass! You ________ it!
   4 We have a lot of homework. I'm sure we ________ it.
   5 They're playing very well. I think they ________ it.
   6 Look at the time. We ________ late.
   7 Oh no, it's a horror film. I'm sure I ________ it.
   8 He didn't put her number in his phone. He ________ it.
11A adverbs (manner and modifiers)

adverbs of manner

They drive dangerously. (5 25)
He dresses fashionably.
She eats very quickly.
I work hard.
We speak English well.

- We use adverbs of manner to say how people do things.
- Adverbs usually go after the verb.
  I speak English very well.

NOT. I speak very well English.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>adverb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>slow</td>
<td>slowly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quick</td>
<td>quickly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad</td>
<td>badly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>careful</td>
<td>carefully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>healthy</td>
<td>healthily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>easy</td>
<td>easily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possible</td>
<td>possibly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fast</td>
<td>fast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hard</td>
<td>hard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

modifying adverbs: very, quite, etc.

It isn’t very expensive. (5 26)
People are quite formal.
She drives incredibly fast.
They speak really slowly.

- We use modifying adverbs with adjectives or other adverbs.
- They always go before the adjective or adverb.

words ending in -ly

Not all words that end in -ly are adverbs, e.g. friendly = adjective.
He’s a friendly person.

11B verbs + to + infinitive: want to, need to, etc.

I want to find a new job. (5 31)
You need to practise every day.
When did you learn to play the guitar?
Would you like to be famous?

- Many verbs are followed by a verb in the infinitive with to.
- These include: want, need, learn, promise, decide, plan, and hope.

would like to

- I would like to = I want to (now or in the future).
- Contractions: I’d = would; wouldn’t = would not.
- Use the infinitive with to after would like. I would like to learn.
  NOT. I would like learn.
- Remember you can also use Would you like…? to offer: Would you like a drink?
- would like is the same for all persons.

would like and like

I’d like to dance. = I want to dance.
I like dancing. = I enjoy it; I like it in general.

11C articles

1 a/an

A What’s this? B It’s a photo of my daughter. (5 37)
A What do they do? B Jim’s a doctor. Sally’s an engineer.
A How often do they have classes? B Three times a week.

2 the

Can you close the window, please?
Can you check their address on the internet?
It’s the best restaurant I know.

3 a or the?

Let’s have a pizza. The pizzas are very good here.

4 no article

Men are usually more interested in sport than women.
She’s my mother’s cousin. That’s Tom’s chair!
Jim goes to school by bus.
11A

a Adjective or adverb? Circle the correct form.

People drive quite dangerous/dangerously.

1 He wrote down the phone number careful/carefully.
2 My neighbour's children aren't very polite/politely.
3 My niece plays the piano beautiful/beautifully.
4 Fast food is incredibly unhealthy/unhealthily.
5 Old people often walk very slow/slowly.
6 I bought a real/really cheap bag in the sales.
7 My friend sings very good/well.
8 My sister speaks Spanish perfect/perfectly.
9 We wear casual/casually clothes to work.
10 The view from the top is incredible/incredibly beautiful.

b Complete with adverbs from these adjectives.

bad carefully easy fast good
hard healthy perfect quietly

The buses and trains in Malmö run perfectly when it snows.
1 Can you talk _______, please? I'm trying to sleep.
2 Don't drive _______ when it's raining.
3 I don't like the sea because I can't swim very _______.
4 She picked up the baby _______ and put him in the bath.
5 We're working _______ because we have an exam.
6 People who do sport usually eat very _______.
7 We played _______ in the semi-final and we lost 5–1.
8 She was the best athlete so she won the race _______.

p.85

11B

a Complete the sentences with to + a verb from the list.

be buy call climb drive get married
go leave pass see stay

Sam loves Africa. He wants to climb Mount Kilimanjaro.
1 I learned _______ a car when I was 17. I passed my test first time!
2 Our fridge is broken. We need _______ a new one.
3 I wouldn't like _______ famous. I'm happy as I am.
4 He promised _______ his girlfriend after work.
5 The weather was terrible. We decided _______ at home.
6 My friend would like _______ Radiohead live. She loves them.
7 They're planning _______. Their wedding is on 12th July.
8 I studied hard last week. I hope _______ the exam.
9 Do you like animals? Would you like _______ on a safari?
10 She's enjoying the party. She doesn't want _______.

b Circle the correct form.

I hate fly flying so I usually travel by train.
1 Would you like have / to have dinner with me tonight?
2 My grandmother learned to drive / driving when she was 62.
3 I'd like to travel / travelling around Europe.
4 I like relax / relaxing at the weekend.
5 Do you want to play / playing football?
6 He's hoping to have / having more time when he retires.
7 Most people hate to go / going to the dentist.
8 I love to read / reading detective stories.
9 It's cold. You need wear / to wear a coat.
10 My mum doesn't like to cook / cooking.

p.86

11C

a Circle the correct word or phrase.

How much time do you spend on internet / the internet?
1 My brother is at university / at the university studying Maths.
2 I'd like cup of tea / a cup of tea, please.
3 We're going to visit my aunt at weekend / at the weekend.
4 We have English classes twice a week / twice week.
5 I love reading novels / the novels.
6 Yolanda is best / the best student in our class.
7 My mum's lawyer / a lawyer.
8 He's the man / a man that I told you about yesterday.
9 Can you open a door / the door for me, please?
10 He had breakfast / the breakfast late this morning.

b Complete with the, a / an, or -.

I'm going to buy a new laptop next week.
1 What time do you finish ______ work?
2 We usually go to the cinema once ______ month.
3 ______ children behaved very badly yesterday.
4 Lorena doesn't like ______ dogs.
5 I want to be ______ engineer when I finish studying.
6 ______ sun came out so we went for a walk.
7 Can you pass ______ salt, please?
8 My mum chose ______ most expensive dessert.
9 Last year we went on holiday by ______ train.
10 This is Joanne. She's ______ very good friend.

p.89
12A present perfect

1 A Have you seen his new film?  B Yes, I've seen all his films. She hasn't read any Harry Potter books.
2 Have you ever read a Russian novel? Sarah's never worked in a big company.
3 Have you finished the exercise? Your parents have arrived. They're in the living room.

1 We use the present perfect when we talk or ask about things that have happened in the past, but when we don't say when.
2 We often use the present perfect with ever (= at any time in your life) and never (= at no time in your life).
3 We also use the present perfect to talk about something that has recently happened.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>full form of have</th>
<th>contraction</th>
<th>past participle of main verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I have</td>
<td>I've</td>
<td>seen that film.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You have</td>
<td>You've</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/She/It has</td>
<td>He/She/It's</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We have</td>
<td>We've</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They have</td>
<td>They've</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I have not</td>
<td>I haven't</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You have not</td>
<td>You haven't</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/She/It has not</td>
<td>He/She/It hasn't</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We have not</td>
<td>We haven't</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They have not</td>
<td>They haven't</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- To make the present perfect use have/has + the past participle of the verb.
- 's = has in present perfect.
- Past participles of regular verbs are the same as the past simple.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>past simple</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>like</td>
<td>liked</td>
<td>liked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>want</td>
<td>wanted</td>
<td>wanted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Past participles of irregular verbs are sometimes the same as the past simple, e.g. read, but sometimes different, e.g. seen.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>past simple</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td>seen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(There is a list of irregular past participles on p.165)

12B present perfect or past simple?

A Have you been to Luigi's?  B Yes, I have.
A Who did you go with?  B I went last weekend.
A When did you go there?  B I went with some people from work.

I've been to New York twice. I went to visit my sister – she's married to an American.

- We often use the present perfect to ask about or tell somebody about a past action for the first time. We don't ask / say when the action happened: Have you been to Luigi's? I've been to New York twice.
- We then use the past simple to ask / talk about specific past details: When did you go there? I went to visit my sister.
- We use the past simple NOT the present perfect with when and past time expressions, e.g. yesterday, last week: When did you see it? NOT When have you seen it? I saw it last week. NOT I've seen it last week.

been or gone?

I've been to Italy. My sister's gone to Italy to study Italian.

- been to and gone to have different meanings. been is the past participle of be, and gone is the past participle of go.
- In the present perfect we use been to (NOT gone to or been in) to say that somebody has visited a place. I've been to the USA three times. Have you been to the new Italian restaurant in George Street?
- We use gone to when somebody goes to a place and is still there: My parents have gone to the USA for their holidays. They don't come back until Saturday.
- Compare: Nick has been to Paris = He visited Paris and came back at some time in the past. Nick has gone to Paris = He went to Paris and he is in Paris now.
12A
a Write the sentences with contractions.
I have seen the film. I've seen the film.
1 She has not read the book.
2 You have not washed the dishes.
3 We have done the housework.
4 He has been ill.
5 They have not eaten Japanese food before.
b Write 3, 4, and 5 sentences in the present perfect.
1 I've met a famous actor.
2 I've forgotten your name.
3 My boyfriend has given me a ring for my last birthday.
4 They've spent a lot of money yesterday.
5 Have you ever won a competition?
6 My friends have had a party last weekend.
7 We've taken any photos.
8 The children have eaten all the biscuits.
9 My girlfriend has called me today.
10 Janet has left her book at home.

12B
a Circle the correct form.
(1) Have you ever eaten? Did you ever eat in 'Appetito'?
1 I haven't bought | didn't buy any new clothes recently.
2 My boyfriend has given | gave me a ring for my last birthday.
3 They've spent | spent a lot of money yesterday.
4 Have you ever won | Did you ever win a competition?
5 My friends have had | had a party last weekend.

b Circle the correct form.
Let's go to the 'Peking Duck'. I've never been gone there.
1 The secretary isn't here. She's gone | been to the bank.
2 I've never gone | been to the USA.
3 My neighbours aren't at home. They've gone | been on holiday.
4 Have you ever gone | been abroad?
5 We have lots of food. We've gone | been to the supermarket.

c Write a sentence in the present perfect for each picture. Use the verbs in the box.
break buy fall go read win

1 They've won the cup.
2
3
4
5

They've won the cup.
his leg.
to the beach.
off his motorbike.
the newspaper.
a new car.

b Put the verbs in brackets in the present perfect or past simple.
A Have you ever travelled abroad? (travel)
B Yes, I went to Portugal last year. (go)
A Have you ever ______ any countries outside Europe? (visit)
B Yes, I have. I went to Morocco a few years ago. (go)
A Who went with? (go)
B My husband. It was a work trip and his company paid for everything. (pay)
A How wonderful! How ______ you ______ there? (get)
B We flew. (fly)
A Where did you stay? (stay)
B We stayed in a suite in a five-star hotel. It was beautiful! (have)
A The company ______ you on any other trips recently? (take)
B No. My husband was working there a year later, so that was our only trip. (stop)
A What a pity!

p.92

p.94
1 DAYS OF THE WEEK

a Complete the days of the week with the letters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>W</th>
<th>Fr</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>S Th</th>
<th>T M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monday</td>
<td>mandei</td>
<td>_day</td>
<td>/mandei/</td>
<td>_iday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tuesday</td>
<td>/tjuzdei/</td>
<td>_saturday</td>
<td>/sætədei/</td>
<td>_nednesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wednesday</td>
<td>/wenzdei/</td>
<td>_sunday</td>
<td>/sændei/</td>
<td>_ursday</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b 10 Listen and check.

c Cover the days of the week. Say them in order.

Useful phrases
the weekend (= Saturday and Sunday)
a weekday (= Monday–Friday)
What day is it today? It’s Friday.
Have a good weekend. You too.
See you on Monday.

Capital letters
Days of the week begin with a capital letter.
Tuesday NOT Tuesday

2 NUMBERS 0–20

a Match the words with the numbers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>twelve</th>
<th>twenty</th>
<th>eleven</th>
<th>three</th>
<th>eighteen</th>
<th>five</th>
<th>fifteen</th>
<th>seven</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>zero</td>
<td>/'zɛrəʊ/</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>___</td>
<td>six</td>
<td>___</td>
<td>five</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>one</td>
<td>/wʌn/</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>___</td>
<td>six</td>
<td>___</td>
<td>seven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>two</td>
<td>/tu/</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>thirteen</td>
<td>/'θɜːtn/</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>fourteen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>three</td>
<td>/θrɪ/</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>four</td>
<td>/fɔːr/</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>sixteen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>four</td>
<td>/fɔːr/</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>___</td>
<td>eight</td>
<td>/'eɪt/</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>five</td>
<td>/fɪv/</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>nineteen</td>
<td>/'nɛnˌtɪn/</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>twenty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>six</td>
<td>/sɪks/</td>
<td>10 ten</td>
<td>/ten/</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>/sɛvntn/</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>eight</td>
<td>/eɪt/</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>nine</td>
<td>/'nɛɪn/</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>ten</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b 11 Listen and check.

c Cover the words. Say the numbers.

Phone numbers
We say the digits separately.
794 1938 = seven nine four, one nine three eight
44 = four four OR double four
0 = zero OR oh

3 NUMBERS 21–100

a Write the numbers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>21</th>
<th>twenty-one</th>
<th>/ˈtwentɪˌwʌn/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>thirty-one</td>
<td>/ˈθɜːtiˌwʌn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>forty-one</td>
<td>/ˈfɔːtiˌwʌn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>fifty-one</td>
<td>/ˈfɪftiˌwʌn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>sixty-one</td>
<td>/ˈsɪksˌtɪn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71</td>
<td>seventy-one</td>
<td>/ˈsevnˌtɪn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81</td>
<td>eighty-one</td>
<td>/ˈeɪtiˌwʌn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91</td>
<td>ninety-one</td>
<td>/ˈnɛntɪˌwʌn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>a hundred</td>
<td>/ˈhʌndrəd/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b 126 Listen and repeat.

4 HIGH NUMBERS

a Write the missing words or numbers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>105</th>
<th>a / one hundred and five</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>350</td>
<td>three hundred and ______</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>875</td>
<td>eight hundred ______ sixty-five</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>a / one thousand /ˌθaʊzənd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2,012</td>
<td>two thousand and ______</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5,420</td>
<td>five thousand four ______ and twenty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100,000</td>
<td>a / one hundred ______</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,000,000</td>
<td>a / one million /ˌmɪljən/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2,300,000</td>
<td>two million ______ hundred thousand</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b 443 Listen and check.
The world

1 CONTINENTS

a Match the words and continents.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Continent</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Africa</td>
<td>African</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia</td>
<td>Asian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>Australian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Europe</td>
<td>European</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North America</td>
<td>North American</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South America</td>
<td>South American</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b 15 Listen and check.

c Cover the words and look at the map. Can you remember the continents and their adjectives?

2 COUNTRIES AND NATIONALITIES

a 16 Match the words and countries. Then listen and check.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Nationality adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>England</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ireland</td>
<td>Irish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poland</td>
<td>Polish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scotland</td>
<td>Scottish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turkey</td>
<td>Turkish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>German</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>Mexican</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the (United) States / the USA</td>
<td>American</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Argentina</td>
<td>Argentinian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>Brazilian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Egypt</td>
<td>Egyptian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hungary</td>
<td>Hungarian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>Italian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russia</td>
<td>Russian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>Chinese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the Czech Republic</td>
<td>Czech</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td>French</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switzerland</td>
<td>Swiss</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b Cover the words and look at the maps. Can you remember the countries and nationalities?

Capital letters
Use CAPITAL letters for countries, continents, nationalities, and languages, e.g. Japan NOT japan; Spanish NOT spanish.
Classroom language

The teacher says

a  Match the phrases and pictures 1–13.
   ◦ Open your books, please.
   ◦ Go to page 84.
   ◦ Do exercise a.
   ◦ Read the text.
   ◦ Look at the board.
   ◦ Close the door.
   ◦ Work in pairs/groups.
   ◦ Answer the questions.
   ◦ Listen and repeat.
   ◦ Stand up.
   ◦ Sit down.
   ◦ Turn off your mobile.
   ◦ Please stop talking!

b  1/32) Listen and check.

You say

a  Match the phrases and pictures 14–22.
   ◦ Sorry, can you repeat that, please?
   ◦ 14 Sorry I’m late.
   ◦ I don’t understand.
   ◦ Can I have a copy, please?
   ◦ How do you spell it?
   ◦ I don’t know.
   ◦ Excuse me, what’s ______ in English?
   ◦ Can you help me, please?
   ◦ What page is it?

b  1/33) Listen and check.

c  Cover the sentences and look at the pictures. Say the sentences.

1. Look at the board.
2. Answer the questions.
   - Use the when we know which (board, questions, etc.).
   - Use look at the board. NOT look at a board.
   - Use the with singular and plural nouns (the board, the questions).

p.8
Things

a. Match the words and pictures.

- a book /bʊk/
- a coin /kɔɪn/
- a credit card /kredit kɔrd/
- a diary /ˈdaɪəri/
- a dictionary /ˈdɪkʃənri/
- a file /ˈfɑɪl/
- glasses /ˈglaɪzəs/ (plural: -es)
- headphones /ˈhedfaʊnz/
- an identity card /ɪdəˈtɛntɪ kɔrd/
- an iPod /ˈaɪpɒd/
- a key /ki/ (plural: -s)
- a laptop /ˈlɛptəp/
- a magazine /mæɡˈzɪn/
- a mobile (phone) /ˈmɔbɪl/ (plural: -s)
- a newspaper /ˈnjuːzpeɪpər/
- a pen /pen/
- a pencil /ˈpensl/ (plural: -s)
- a photo /ˈfəʊtəʊ/ (plural: -s)
- a piece of paper /pɪs av 'peɪpa/
- a purse /pɜːrз/ (plural: -s)
- scissors /ˈsɪkəz/ (plural: -s)
- a stamp /stæmp/ (plural: -s)
- sunglasses /ˈsʌŋglərs/ (plural: -s)
- a ticket /ˈtɪkət/
- a tissue /ˈtʃəsə/ (plural: -s)
- an umbrella /əˈmɜrbrelə/ (plural: -s)
- a wallet /ˈwɛlət/
- a watch /wɔtʃ/ (plural: -s)

b. 51. Listen and check.

Plural nouns

Some words for things are plural, e.g. glasses, headphones, trousers.
Don't use a / an with plural nouns.
NOT a glasses, a headphones.

C. Cover the words and look at the pictures. In pairs, ask and answer.

What is it? It's a watch.

What are they? They're glasses.

p. 12
1 COMMON ADJECTIVES

a. Match the words and pictures 1–16.

1 dangerous /ˈdeindʒərəs/ safe
2 dirty /ˈdɪtri/ expensive
3 easy /ˈiːzɪ/ /ɪˈspɛnsɪv/
4 empty /ˈempti/ far
5 fast /fæst/ fast
6 high /hau/ fast
7 hot /hɒt/ high
8 long /lɒŋ/ hot
9 old /əʊld/ long
10 rich /rɪtʃ/ old
11 strong /strɔŋ/ rich
12 wrong /rɒŋ/ strong

b. (1:60) Listen and check.

c. Match these adjectives with their opposites in a.

cheap /tʃiːp/ expensive
cheap /klɪn/ expensive
cheap /koʊld/ expensive
difficult /ˈdɪfɪkəlt/ poor
full /fʊl/ near
full /fʊl/ near
full /fʊl/ near

d. (1:61) Listen and check. Then test your partner. A say an adjective and B say the opposite.

Modifiers: very / really, quite
We often use these words before adjectives.
A Ferrari is very / really fast.
It's quite cold today. (= It's cold, but not very cold)

b. (1:62) Listen and check.

c. Look at the things in the list. Say two adjectives for each one. Use modifiers.

A Ferrari Mount Everest Bill Gates
The Pyramids Africa Your town / city

A Ferrari - it's really fast and very expensive.

2 APPEARANCE

a. Match the opposite adjectives and the pictures.

blonde /ˈblɒnd/ dark /daːk/ old /əʊld/ young /ˈjʌŋ/
beautiful /ˈbjuːtɪfl/ ugly /ˈʌgli/ tall /tæl/ short /ʃɔrt/
fat /fæt/ thin /θɪn/

b. (1:67) Listen and check.

c. Cover the adjectives and look at the pictures. Test yourself or a partner.

Positive adjectives for appearance
Beautiful, good-looking, pretty, and attractive can all be used for women, but for men we only use good-looking or attractive.
Verb phrases

a Match the verbs and pictures.

- cook /kuk/
- do /du/
- drink /drɪŋk/
- eat /ɪt/
- go /gəʊ/
- have /hev/
- like /laɪk/
- listen /'lɪsn/
- live /lɪv/
- play /pleɪ/
- read /rɪd/
- say /seɪ/
- speak /spɪk/
- study /'stʌdi/
- take /teɪk/
- want /wɒnt/
- watch /wɒtʃ/
- wear /weər/
- work /wɜːk/

b (2 2) Listen and check.

work
Work has two meanings.
1. She works in a museum.
   = it's her job
2. The phone doesn't work.
   = it's broken

have or eat?
Have can be used with both food and drink, and is common with meals, e.g. have a sandwich, have a coffee, have lunch.
Eat can only be used with food, e.g. eat fast food.

c Cover the verbs and look at the pictures. Test yourself or a partner.

p.20
a Match the words and pictures.

- an administrator /ɒd'mɪnɪstretə/
- an architect /'ærktɪkət/
- a builder /'bʌldər/
- a chef / a cook /'kʊk/  
- a dentist /'dɛnstɪtʃər/  
- a doctor /'dɒktər/  
- an engineer /'ɪndʒɪnɪər/  
- a factory worker /'fæktəri wɜːkər/  
- a flight attendant /'flaɪt ə'tɛntənd/  
- a footballer /'fʊtbɔːlər/  
- a hairdresser /'heərdrɛsər/  
- a journalist /'dʒɜːnəlɪst/  
- a lawyer /'lɑːdʒɪər/  
- a (bank) manager /'bæŋk ˈmæŋdʒər/  
- a model /'məʊdl/  
- a musician /'mjuːzɪkən/  
- a nurse /nɜːs/  
- a pilot /'pɔɪlət/  
- a policeman / a policewoman /'pɒlɪsmaʊn/  
- a receptionist /'rɪskjənʃənst/  
- a shop assistant /'ʃɒp ə'sɪstənt/  
- a soldier /'sɔldʒər/  
- a teacher /'tiːtʃər/  
- a vet /vet/  
- a waiter / a waitress /'wɛtə/ /'wɛtərəs/  

Pronunciation
In multisyllable words, final -er /-or is pronounced /ər/, e.g. doctor, teacher.  
Final -i/-is pronounced /ɪz/, e.g. musician.

a / an + jobs
We use a / an + job words.  
She's a model. NOT She's model.

b (28) Listen and check.

c Cover the jobs. In pairs, say what the people do.

She's a vet. He's an engineer.

d (29) Listen and repeat the sentences. What do you do?

What do you do?

I'm a musician.  
I work for a French company.  
I'm a student.  
I'm unemployed.

I'm an engineer.  
I work in a shop.  
I'm at university.  
I'm retired.

p.22
The family

a. Look at the two family trees. Number the people in relation to Richard.

1. aunt /ɑːnt/
2. brother /braðər/
3. cousin /ˈkʌzn/
4. daughter /ˈdɔːtər/
5. father /ˈfaːðər/
6. grandfather /ˈɡrænfɑːðər/
7. grandmother /ˈɡrænmɑːðər/
8. mother /ˈmʌðər/
9. nephew /ˈnɛfjuː/
10. niece /ˈniːsə/
11. sister /ˈsɪstər/
12. son /sɔn/
13. uncle /ˈʌŋkl/
14. wife /waɪf/

b. Complete 1–3 with children, grandparents, parents.

1. my father and my mother = my ______ /ˈpeərnts/  
   - Richard
   - Kate
   - Steven
   - Hugh
   - Sarah

2. my grandfather and my grandmother = my ______ /ˈɡrænpærənts/  
   - Richard
   - Kate
   - Christopher
   - Emma

3. my son and my daughter = my ______ /ˈtʃildrən/  
   - Cathy
   - Jake
   - Oliver
   - Sally

More family words
- My wife's mother = my mother-in-law: My sister's husband = my brother-in-law, etc.
- My mother's second husband = my stepfather
- My father's daughter from another wife = my stepsister

(c) Listen and check your answers to a and b.

d. Cover the words. In pairs, ask and answer.

Who's Jennifer? (She's Richard's grandmother.)

Who are Sue and Nick? (They're Richard's aunt and uncle.)
Everyday activities

a  Match the verbs and pictures.

Suzy Stressed
- have a shower
- have a coffee
- do the housework
- start work at 8.30
- finish work at 6.30
- get dressed
- wake up at 7.00
- have lunch at work
- go shopping
- go to bed late
- have pizza for dinner
- get home late
- go to work by bus
- watch TV and check emails

Henry Healthy
- go to Italian classes
- do Italian homework
- get up at 8.00
- have breakfast
- do exercise
- go home early
- walk to work
- relax
- take the dog for a walk
- sleep for eight hours
- make the dinner
- have a bath

b  2 37 Listen and check.

c  In pairs, cover the phrases and look at the pictures. A describe Suzy’s day, then B describe Henry’s day. Then swap.

have
Have has two meanings.
1. For family and possessions, e.g. I have three children. He has a big house.
2. For activities, e.g. I have lunch at 1.30. She has a shower in the morning.

p.30
1 TELLING THE TIME

a. Match the clocks and phrases.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clock</th>
<th>Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>![Clock 1]</td>
<td>It's a quarter past six.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Clock 2]</td>
<td>It's six o'clock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Clock 3]</td>
<td>It's a quarter to seven.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Clock 4]</td>
<td>It's ten past six.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Clock 5]</td>
<td>It's five to seven.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Clock 6]</td>
<td>It's twenty-five to seven.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Clock 7]</td>
<td>It's half past six.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Clock 8]</td>
<td>It's three minutes past six.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Clock 9]</td>
<td>It's twenty past six.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. **(2.24)** Listen and check.

c. Cover the phrases. Ask and answer with a partner.

   What time is it? — It's...

< p.26

---

2 EXPRESSIONS OF FREQUENCY

a. Complete the expressions.

- How often do you see your friends?

1. every /'evri/ day. M, T, W, Th, F, S, S
2. every w________ week 1, week 2, week 3, etc.
3. every m________ January, February, March, etc.
5. once /wʌns/ a________ only on Mondays
6. twice /twais/ a________ on Mondays and Wednesdays
7. three times a________ on Mondays, Wednesdays, and Fridays
8. four times a________ in January, April, July, and October

b. **(2.46)** Listen and check.

c. Cover the left-hand column. Test yourself.

---

3 ADVERBS OF FREQUENCY

a. Match sentences 1–6 with a–f. What do the highlighted words mean?

1. [ ] I always /'ælwaz/ get up at 7.00 during the week.
2. [ ] I often /'ɒfn/ go to the cinema after work.
3. [ ] I usually /'ju:ʒuəli/ finish work at 6.00.
4. [ ] I sometimes /'sʌmtaɪmz/ meet a friend for lunch.
5. [ ] I hardly ever /'hɑːdli ɪvə/ go to the theatre.
6. [ ] I never /'nvər/ have coffee.

   a. About seven or eight times a month.
   b. I start work at 8.00 every day.
   c. But on Fridays we stop at 3.00.
   d. I don't like it.
   e. Only once or twice a year.
   f. About once or twice a month.

b. **(2.47)** Listen and check.

---

Cover sentences 1–6 and look at a–f. Can you remember the sentences?

c. Cover sentences 1–6 and look at a–f. Can you remember the sentences?

d. **(2.48)** Listen and repeat the highlighted adverbs of frequency.

< p.32
More verb phrases

a Match the verbs and pictures.

1. buy (a ticket) /ˈbai/  
2. call / phone (your mum) /kɔl/ /faʊn/  
3. dance (the tango) /dɑːns/  
4. draw (a picture) /drɔː/  
5. drive (a car) /draɪv/  
6. find (a parking space) /faɪnd/  
7. forget (somebody's name) /fəˌgɛt/  
8. give (somebody flowers) /ɡɪv/  
9. hear (a noise) /hɜː/  
10. help (somebody) /help/  
11. look for (your keys) /lʊk fɔː/  
12. meet (for a coffee) /miːt/  
13. paint (a picture) /peɪnt/  
14. play (chess) /pleɪ/  
15. remember (somebody's name) /rɪˈmembə/  
16. run (a race) /rʌn/  
17. see (a film) /siː/  
18. sing (a song) /sɪŋ/  
19. swim (in the sea) /swɪm/  
20. take (photos) /teɪk/  
21. talk (to your teacher) /tɔːk/  
22. tell (somebody a secret) /tel/  
23. use (a computer) /juːz/  
24. wait for (a bus) /wɒt fɔː/  

b (54) Listen and check.

c Cover the verbs and look at the pictures. Test yourself or a partner.

p.36
The weather and dates

1 THE WEATHER
a Complete the chart with words from the list.
- cloudy /ˈklaʊdi/ - hot /hɔt/ - raining /ˈreɪniŋ/
- cold /kəld/ - snowing /ˈsnəʊɪŋ/ - windy /ˈwɪndi/ 
- foggy /ˈfɒgi/ - sunny /ˈsʌnɪ/ 

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What's the weather like?</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>It's sunny.</td>
<td>It's _____</td>
<td>It's _____</td>
<td>It's _____</td>
<td>It's _____</td>
<td>It's _____</td>
<td>It's _____</td>
<td>It's _____</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b (3.8) Listen and check.

Other adjectives for temperature
- warm /wɔːm/ = a nice temperature, not very hot (opposite = cool /kuːl/)

c Cover the chart and look at the pictures. Ask and answer with a partner.
- What's the weather like? It's sunny.

The four seasons

(3.9) Match the words and pictures. Listen and check.

[Images of winter, autumn, summer, spring]

- spring /ˈsprɪŋ/ - autumn /ˈɔːtəm/ - summer /ˈsʌmər/ - winter /ˈwɪntər/

d What's the weather like today? What season is it where you are?

p.40

2 THE DATE

a Complete the months. Remember to use CAPITAL letters!
- January __pril __uly __o ber
- __ebruary __a y __u gus t __vember
- __arch __u ne __eptember __eber

b (3.29) Listen and check.

c Complete the numbers and words.
- 1st first /fa:st/
- 2nd second /ˈsekwənd/
- 3rd third /θɜːd/
- 4th fourth /faʊrθ/
- 5th fifth /fɪfθ/
- 6th sixth /sɪksθ/
- 7th seventh /ˈsevθ/ (American) /ˈsevnθ/ (British)
- 8th eighth /eɪθθ/ (American) /eɪθθ/ (British)
- 9th ninth /naɪnθ/
- 10th tenth /tiːnth/
- 11th eleventh /ɪˈlevəntθ/ (American) /iˈlevəntθ/ (British)
- 12th twelfth /twelfθ/ (American) /ˈtwelfθ/ (British)
- 13th thirteenth /ˈθɜːrθθ/ (American) /ˈθɜːrθθ/ (British)
- 14th fourteenth /ˈfɔːrθθ/ (American) /ˈfɔːrθθ/ (British)
- 21st twenty-first /ˈtwentɪ ˈfɔːstθ/ (American) /ˈtwentɪ ˈfɔːstθ/ (British)
- 22nd twenty-second /ˈtwentɪ ˈsekwənd/ (American) /ˈtwentɪ ˈsekwənd/ (British)
- 23rd twenty-third /ˈtwentɪ ˈθɜːrd/ (American) /ˈtwentɪ ˈθɜːrd/ (British)
- 24th twenty-fourth /ˈtwentɪ ˈfɔːrθθ/ (American) /ˈtwentɪ ˈfɔːrθθ/ (British)
- 30th thirtieth /ˈθɜːrti ˈeɪtiθθ/ (American) /ˈθɜːrti ˈeɪtiθθ/ (British)

(3.30) Listen and check.

Writing and saying the date
- We write 12th March 22/1
- We say the twelfth of March the twenty-second of January

Prepositions with years, months, and dates
- Use in + years, e.g., The Rio Olympics are in 2016.
- Use in + months, e.g., My birthday is in February.
- Use on + dates, e.g., The meeting is on Friday 5th September.

Saying years
- 1807 eighteen oh seven
- 1936 nineteen thirty-six
- 2008 two thousand and eight (for years 2000–2010)
- 2011 two thousand and eleven OR twenty eleven

c What's the date today? What's the date tomorrow? What year is it?

p.46
a. Match the verbs and pictures.

- by bus / by car / by plane /bʌs/ /ka:/ /plɛn/
- for a walk /wɔk/
- home /frəm sa:mpl/ /haum/
- out /on Fridaɪ nihta/ /aut/
- shopping /'ʃɒpɪŋ/
- to a restaurant /'restraʊnt/
- to bed /lɛt/ /bed/
- to church /to mɔsɪk / /fɔtʃ/ /maʊzIk/
- to the beach /biːtʃ/
- back (to work) /bæk/
- on holiday /'hɒlideɪ/

- a car /a bɪk/ /ka:/ /bɪk/
- long hair /lɒŋ 'heə:/
- breakfast /lʌntʃ /'dɪnər
- /brekfɔst/ /lʌntʃ/ /'dɪnər/
- a drink /drɪŋk/
- a good time /gʊd 'taɪm/
- a sandwich /'sænwɪdʃ/
- a shower /a bɑθ /a swɪm
- /'ʃɔʊər/ /bɑθ/ /swɪm/

- a newspaper (= buy) /'nju:zpeɪpər/
- a taxi /a bɔs /a træin (= take)
- /'teɪksi/ /bɔs/ /'træn/
- an email /a lɛtər (= receive)
- /'eləm/ /'letər/
- dressed /drest/
- home (= arrive) /haum/
- to the airport (= arrive) /'eəpɔrt/
- up (early) /ʌp/

b. (3.61) Listen and check.

c. Cover the expressions and look at the pictures. Test yourself or a partner.

d. Take turns to say three things you did yesterday and three you did last week with went, had, or got.

Yesterday I got up early. I had breakfast in a café. I went shopping...
The house

1 ROOMS
Match the words and pictures 1–10.
- a bathroom /ˈbɑːθrʊm/
- a bedroom /ˈbedrʊm/
- a dining room /ˈdaɪnɪŋ rʊm/
- a garage /ˈɡærɑːʒ/  
- a garden /ˈɡɑːdn/  
- a hall /hɛl/  
- a kitchen /ˈkitʃɪn/  
- a living room /ˈlɪvɪŋ rʊm/  
- a study /ˈstʌdɪ/  
- a toilet /ˈtɔːlt/  

2 PARTS OF A ROOM
Match the words and pictures 11–15.
- a balcony /ˈbælnkəni/  
- the ceiling /ˈsiːlɪŋ/  
- the floor /fɔːl/  
- the stairs /steɪz/  
- the wall /ˈwɔːl/  

3 THINGS IN A ROOM
a) Match the words and pictures 16–31.
- an armchair /ˈɑːmrtfɪə/  
- a bath /bɑːθ/  
- a bed /bed/  
- a carpet /ˈkɑːpɪt/  
- a cooker /ˈkʊkər/  
- a cupboard /ˈkʌbɔːrd/  
- a fireplace /ˈfɜːrɪpleɪs/  
- a fridge /frɪdʒ/  
- a lamp /lemp/  
- a light /lait/  
- a mirror /ˈmɪrər/  
- a plant /ˈplɑːnt/  
- a shelf (shelves) /ʃelf/  
- a shower /ˈʃauər/  
- a sofa /ˈsəʊfə/ /ˈkɑːʊfə/  
- a washing machine /ˈwɒʃɪŋ mɑːʃɪn/  

Central heating and air conditioning
Central heating is a system that makes a house warm, usually using radiators.
Air conditioning is a system that makes a house cool.

b) 4:12 Listen and check 1–3.
c) Cover the words and look at the pictures. Test yourself or a partner.

p.62
Prepositions: place and movement

1 PLACE
   a Match the words and pictures.
      - in /ɪn/
      - in front of /ɪn frʌnt əv/
      - on /ɒn/
      - under /ˈʌndər/
      - behind /bɪˈhænd/
      - between /brɪˈtwɪzn/
      - opposite /ˈɑːpəzit/
      - next to /ˈnekst tu/
      - over /ˈəʊvər/
   b 4 21 Listen and check.
   c In pairs, ask and answer about the pictures.
      Where's the ghost?
      
      It's under the bed.

2 MOVEMENT
   a Match the words and pictures.
      - from...to /frəm...tu/
      - into /ˈɪntu/
      - out of /əut əv/
      - up /ʌp/
      - down /daʊn/
      - towards /təˈwɔːdz/
   b 4 22 Listen and check.
   c In pairs, ask and answer about the pictures.
      Where's the ghost going?
      
      It's going from the bar to room 11.

p.65
a Match the words and pictures.

**Breakfast** /brekfʌst/
- bread /bred/ 
- butter /ˈbʌtə/ 
- cereal /ˈsɔrɪəl/ 
- cheese /ˈtʃiːz/ 
- coffee /ˈkɒfi/ 
- eggs /ɪɡz/ 
- jam /dʒæm/ 
- (orange) juice /ˈdʒuːɪs/ 
- milk /mɪlk/ 
- sugar /ˈʃʊgə/ 
- 1 tea /tiː/ 
- toast /təʊst/ 

**Lunch / dinner** /ˈlʌntʃ/ /ˈdɪnər/
- fish /fɪʃ/ 
- meat (steak, chicken, sausages, ham) /miːt/ 
- (olive) oil /ˈɔl/ 
- pasta /ˈpæstə/ 
- rice /raɪs/ 
- salad /ˈsæləd/ 

**Vegetables** /ˈvedʒtəblz/ 
- carrots /ˈkærəts/ 
- chips (French fries) /ˈtʃɪps/ 
- a lettuce /ˈletəs/ 
- mushrooms /ˈmjuːʃənz/ 
- onions /ˈɒnɪonz/ 
- peas /piːz/ 
- potatoes /ˈpɒtətəʊz/ 
- tomatoes /ˈtəmətəʊz/ 

**Fruit** /fruːt/ 
- apples /ˈæplz/ 
- bananas /ˈbænəməz/ 
- oranges /ˈɔrɪndʒz/ 
- a pineapple /ˈpɪənɪpl/ 
- strawberries /ˈstrɔːbrɪz/ 

**Desserts** /dɪˈzɛrts/ 
- cake /keɪk/ 
- fruit salad /ˈfrʌt ˈsæləd/ 
- ice cream /ˈaɪs ˈkrɪm/ 

**Snacks** /ˈsnæks/ 
- biscuits /ˈbɪskɪts/ 
- chocolate /ˈtʃɒkələt/ 
- crisps /ˈkrɪspz/ 
- sandwiches /ˈsænwɪdʒz/ 
- sweets /swɪ茨/ 

b (4 29) Listen and check.
c Cover the words and look at the pictures. Test yourself or a partner.
a Match the words and pictures.

- an art gallery /ˈɑːrt ɡæləri/
- a bridge /ˈbrɪdʒ/
- a bus station /ˈbʌs stiːʃn/
- a car park /ˈkɑːr pɑːk/
- a castle /ˈkæzl/  
- a chemist’s /a pharmacy /ˈkemɪstz/ /ˈfɑːraməsi/
- a church /kɜːʃ/  
- a department store /dɪˈpɑːrtmənt stɔːr/
- a hospital /ˈhɒspɪtl/  
- a market /ˈmɑːkɪt/  
- a mosque /ˈmɒsk/  
- a museum /ˈmjuːziəm/  
- a police station /ˈpəlɪs steɪʃn/  
- a post office /ˈpəʊst əfɪs/  
- a railway station /ˈreɪlweɪ steɪʃn/  
- a river /ˈrɪvər/  
- a road /rəʊd/  
- a shopping centre /a mall /ˈʃɒpɪŋ sentə/ /ˈmɔːl/  
- a square /ˈskwɛər/  
- a street /strɪt/  
- a supermarket /ˈsʌpərmɑːkɪt/  
- a temple /ˈtempəl/  
- a theatre /ˈθɪətər/  
- a town hall /ˈtaʊn hɔːl/  

b Listen and check.

c Cover the words and look at the pictures. Test yourself or a partner.

< p.76 >
## Irregular verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past simple</th>
<th>Past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be /bi:/</td>
<td>was /waz/</td>
<td>been /bien/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become /bɪˈkæm/</td>
<td>became /bɪˈkæm/</td>
<td>become</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin /ˈbɪɡɪn/</td>
<td>began /ˈbɪɡən/</td>
<td>begun /ˈbɪɡən/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break /breɪk/</td>
<td>broke /breɪk/</td>
<td>broken /brəˈken/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring /brɪŋ/</td>
<td>brought /brɪtʃt/</td>
<td>brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build /bɪld/</td>
<td>built /bɪlt/</td>
<td>built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy /baɪ/</td>
<td>bought /baʊt/</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can /kæn/</td>
<td>could /kʊd/</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch /ˈkætʃ/</td>
<td>caught /kɔtʃt/</td>
<td>caught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come /kəm/</td>
<td>came /kæm/</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost /kɒst/</td>
<td>cost /kɒst/</td>
<td>cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do /djuː/</td>
<td>did /dɪd/</td>
<td>done /dəʊn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink /drɪŋk/</td>
<td>drank /drɪŋk/</td>
<td>drunk /drɪŋk/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive /draɪv/</td>
<td>drove /draʊv/</td>
<td>driven /drɪvn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat /eɪt/</td>
<td>ate /eɪt/</td>
<td>eaten /ˈeɪtn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall /fɔːl/</td>
<td>fell /fɛl/</td>
<td>fallen /ˈfɛldan/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel /fiːl/</td>
<td>felt /fɛlt/</td>
<td>felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find /faɪnd/</td>
<td>found /faʊnd/</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly /flaɪ/</td>
<td>flew /flɔː/</td>
<td>flown /fləʊn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget /fəˈɡɛt/</td>
<td>forgot /fəˈɡɛt/</td>
<td>forgotten /fəˈɡɔtnt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get /ɡet/</td>
<td>got /ɡot/</td>
<td>got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give /ɡɪv/</td>
<td>gave /ɡɛv/</td>
<td>given /ˈɡɪvn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go /ɡoʊ/</td>
<td>went /wɛnt/</td>
<td>gone /ɡɔn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have /hæv/</td>
<td>had /hæd/</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear /hɪər/</td>
<td>heard /hɑːrd/</td>
<td>heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know /nəʊ/</td>
<td>knew /njuː/</td>
<td>known /ˈnɔːn/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Past simple and Past participle

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past simple</th>
<th>Past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>leave /liːv/</td>
<td>left /liːt/</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose /luːz/</td>
<td>lost /loʊst/</td>
<td>lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make /meɪk/</td>
<td>made /meɪd/</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet /miːt/</td>
<td>met /miːt/</td>
<td>met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay /peɪ/</td>
<td>paid /peɪd/</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put /pʊt/</td>
<td>put /pʊt/</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read /rɛd/</td>
<td>read /rɛd/</td>
<td>read /rɛd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run /rʌn/</td>
<td>ran /ræn/</td>
<td>run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say /seɪ/</td>
<td>said /sɛd/</td>
<td>said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see /siː/</td>
<td>saw /sɔː/</td>
<td>seen /ˈsiːn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send /sɛnd/</td>
<td>sent /sɛnt/</td>
<td>sent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing /sɪŋ/</td>
<td>sang /sæŋ/</td>
<td>sung /ˈsʌŋ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit /sɪt/</td>
<td>sat /sæt/</td>
<td>sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep /sliːp/</td>
<td>slept /sliːpt/</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak /spiːk/</td>
<td>spoke /spɔːk/</td>
<td>spoken /ˈspɔːkn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spend /spend/</td>
<td>spent /spɛnt/</td>
<td>spent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand /stænd/</td>
<td>stood /stɔd/</td>
<td>stood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim /swɪm/</td>
<td>swam /swæm/</td>
<td>swum /ˈswʌm/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach /tiːʃ/</td>
<td>taught /tiːt/</td>
<td>taught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take /teɪk/</td>
<td>took /tɔk/</td>
<td>taken /ˈteɪkan/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell /tel/</td>
<td>told /tɔld/</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think /θɪŋk/</td>
<td>thought /θɔːt/</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand /ˌʌndərˈstænd/</td>
<td>understood /ˌʌndərˈstʊd/</td>
<td>understood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake /weɪk/</td>
<td>woke /wɔk/</td>
<td>woken /ˈwɔːkan/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear /weər/</td>
<td>wore /wɔːr/</td>
<td>worn /ˈwɔrn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win /wɪn/</td>
<td>won /wʌn/</td>
<td>won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write /raɪt/</td>
<td>wrote /rəʊt/</td>
<td>written /ˈrɪtn/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Vowel sounds

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>usual spelling</th>
<th>! but also</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i  his this</td>
<td>English women busy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>film six</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big swim</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ee meet three</td>
<td>people police key niece</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ea speak eat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e  me we</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a  thanks flat black Japan have stamp</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ar garden party start</td>
<td>aunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a  father glasses dance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o  hot stop coffee long not box</td>
<td>what watch want</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or sport door</td>
<td>water four bought thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al talk small</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aw saw draw</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u  full put</td>
<td>could would woman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oo good book</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look room</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u* June use</td>
<td>do fruit juice shoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ew new flew</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oo school food</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bull</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boot</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tourst</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/i/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/u/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*especially before consonant + e*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>usual spelling</th>
<th>! but also</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>u  bus lunch</td>
<td>come brother son does young</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ugly run</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lucky cat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a* name make</td>
<td>break steak great eight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ai rain paint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ay play day</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o* home close</td>
<td>slow low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>old don't</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oa road toast</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i* nine twice</td>
<td>buy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y  my why</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>igh high night</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ou out thousand house count</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ow how brown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oi coin noise</td>
<td>toilet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oy toy enjoy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eer beer engineer</td>
<td>really idea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ere here we're</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ear year hear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>air airport stairs fair hair</td>
<td>their there wear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are square careful</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A very unusual sound.

euro Europe poor sure plural

A sound between /i/ and /u/.
Consonant + y at the end of words is pronounced /j/.

happy any thirsty

An unusual sound.
education usually situation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>short vowels</th>
<th>long vowels</th>
<th>diphthongs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Consonant sounds

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>usual spelling</th>
<th>! but also</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>p</strong> paper, pilot</td>
<td>Poland, sleep, apple, happy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>b</strong> be, table, job</td>
<td>builder, number, rubber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>c</strong> credit card, actor</td>
<td>Christmas, chemist’s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>k</strong> kitchen, like</td>
<td>black, back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>g</strong> green, get</td>
<td>angry, big, eggs, bigger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>f</strong> Friday, fifteen, wife</td>
<td>photo, elephant, office, coffee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>v</strong> very, eleven</td>
<td>live, travel, river, love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>t</strong> tea, take</td>
<td>student, sit, letter, bottle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>d</strong> dance, understand</td>
<td>bad, read, address, middle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>s</strong> sister, stops</td>
<td>stress, actress, city, cinema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>z</strong> zero, Brazil</td>
<td>music, please, dogs, watches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sh</strong> shopping, shoes</td>
<td>sugar, sure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ti (+ vowel)</strong></td>
<td>Spanish, fish, station, information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>si (+ on)</strong></td>
<td>revision, decision, confusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>h</strong> happy, hungry</td>
<td>hotel, behind, hall, head</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Sound Bank

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>usual spelling</th>
<th>! but also</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>th</strong> think, thirty</td>
<td>throw, bathroom, fourth, tenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ŋ</strong></td>
<td>English sound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>m</strong> man, Monday</td>
<td>money, swim, music, student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>mm</strong></td>
<td>summer, swimming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>n</strong></td>
<td>never, nine, run, dinner, thinner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ng</strong></td>
<td>song, England, language, thing, long, going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>j</strong> January, juice</td>
<td>July, enjoy, German, manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>d</strong></td>
<td>bridge, fridge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>r</strong> red, rich</td>
<td>problem, try, sorry, terrible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>w</strong></td>
<td>window, twenty, Wednesday, win</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>wh</strong></td>
<td>why, when</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>y</strong> yellow, yesterday</td>
<td>young, yes, before, use, university</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>yacht</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>m</strong></td>
<td>man, Monday,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>mm</strong></td>
<td>summer, swimming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>n</strong></td>
<td>never, nine, run, dinner, thinner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ng</strong></td>
<td>song, England, language, thing, long, going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>j</strong></td>
<td>January, juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>d</strong></td>
<td>bridge, fridge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>r</strong> red, rich</td>
<td>problem, try, sorry, terrible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>w</strong></td>
<td>window, twenty, Wednesday, win</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>wh</strong></td>
<td>why, when</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>y</strong> yellow, yesterday</td>
<td>young, yes, before, use, university</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>yacht</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>m</strong></td>
<td>man, Monday,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>mm</strong></td>
<td>summer, swimming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>n</strong></td>
<td>never, nine, run, dinner, thinner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ng</strong></td>
<td>song, England, language, thing, long, going</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **voiced**
- **unvoiced**
ENGLISH FILE
the best way to get students talking

English File third edition gives you motivating, enjoyable lessons that work.

- A proven balance of Grammar, Vocabulary, Pronunciation, and skills.
- Engaging topics, tasks, and activities that get students talking on every page.
- A complete teaching and learning package.

NEW for English File third edition

Student's Book ➔ Fresh, lively lessons relevant to students' lives and learning needs.

iTutor ➔ Revise, review, and improve, with interactive activities, audio, and video, including mobile content.

Video ➔ Practical English drama, in the Street interviews, and Short films.

English Sounds Pronunciation Chart based on an original idea and design by Paul Seligson and Carmen Dolz.

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.oup.com